



Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

16 March 2006

COPYRIGHT

The *Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description* is owned and published by the Blu-ray Disc Association. All rights are reserved.

DISCLAIMER

The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication, however, members of the Blu-ray Disc Association will not be liable for any damages, including indirect or consequential, from use of the *Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description* or reliance on the accuracy of this document.

LICENSING

Application of the *Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description* in host environments is permitted and no additional written copyright license regarding *Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description* from the Blu-ray Disc Association is required.

PURPOSE

The information contained in this document is being made available for the purpose of standardization. Permission is granted to members of INCITS, its technical committees and their associated task groups to use, reproduce, or display this document solely for the purposes of INCITS standardization activities, provided this NOTICE shall be included in any reproduction of this document:

NOTICE

For any information regarding any patent license program on Blu-ray Disc Media, Players or Recorders, please consult with the patent owners, including but not limited to members of the Blu-ray Disc Association.

For any information regarding any Blu-ray Disc Format and Logo license program on Blu-ray Disc Media, Players or Recorders, please consult with Sony Corporation, Tokyo, Japan. For any further explanation of the contents of this document, or in case of any perceived inconsistency or ambiguity of interpretation, or for further details on contact persons of any of the above listed companies, please consult with:

Shunji Ohara
Matsushita Electric Industrial Co.,LTD
E-mail : ohara.shunji@jp.panasonic.com
Tel : +81-6-6900-9247
Fax : +81-6-6907-1725

This page is intentionally blank

Contents

| | | |
|--------|---|----|
| 1 | Scope..... | 12 |
| 2 | References..... | 14 |
| 2.1 | Normative References..... | 14 |
| 2.1.1 | Approved References..... | 14 |
| 2.1.2 | References Under Development..... | 14 |
| 2.2 | Other References | 15 |
| 3 | Definitions and Abbreviations | 16 |
| 3.1 | General..... | 16 |
| 3.2 | Terms..... | 16 |
| 3.2.1 | ADIP (Address In Pre-groove)..... | 16 |
| 3.2.2 | BD..... | 16 |
| 3.2.3 | BD-ROM..... | 16 |
| 3.2.4 | BD-R..... | 16 |
| 3.2.5 | BD-RE | 16 |
| 3.2.6 | Block (Logical Block)..... | 16 |
| 3.2.7 | Certification..... | 16 |
| 3.2.8 | Cluster | 16 |
| 3.2.9 | Defect List (DFL)..... | 16 |
| 3.2.10 | Disc/Defect Management Structure (DMS)..... | 17 |
| 3.2.11 | Disc Definition Structure (DDS)..... | 17 |
| 3.2.12 | Drive | 17 |
| 3.2.13 | Embossed Area | 17 |
| 3.2.14 | Full Certification..... | 17 |
| 3.2.15 | Host..... | 17 |
| 3.2.16 | Inner Spare Area (ISA0, ISA1)..... | 17 |
| 3.2.17 | Logical Overwrite (LOW)..... | 17 |
| 3.2.18 | Logical Sector Number (LSN) | 17 |
| 3.2.19 | Orphan LBA(s)..... | 17 |
| 3.2.20 | Outer Spare Area (OSA0, OSA1)..... | 18 |
| 3.2.21 | Permanent Information & Control data (PIC) Zone | 18 |
| 3.2.22 | Physical Sector Number (PSN)..... | 18 |
| 3.2.23 | Pseudo-Overwrite (POW)..... | 18 |
| 3.2.24 | Quick Certification | 18 |
| 3.2.25 | Quick Reformat..... | 18 |
| 3.2.26 | Random Recording Mode (RRM)..... | 18 |
| 3.2.27 | Recordable Unit..... | 18 |
| 3.2.28 | Sector | 18 |
| 3.2.29 | Sequential Recording Mode (SRM)..... | 18 |
| 3.2.30 | SRM+POW..... | 19 |
| 3.2.31 | SRM-POW..... | 19 |
| 3.2.32 | Sequential Recording Range (SRR) | 19 |
| 3.2.33 | Sequential Recording Range Information (SRRI) | 19 |
| 3.2.34 | Space Bit Map (SBM)..... | 19 |
| 3.2.35 | Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA)..... | 19 |

| | | |
|--------|--|----|
| 3.2.36 | Temporary Disc Management Structure (TDMS) | 19 |
| 3.2.37 | Writable Unit | 19 |
| 3.2.38 | Zone | 19 |
| 3.3 | Abbreviations | 20 |
| 4 | BD Models | 22 |
| 4.1 | General | 22 |
| 4.1.1 | Physical Structure | 22 |
| 4.1.2 | Spiral Structure | 23 |
| 4.2 | BD-ROM | 25 |
| 4.2.1 | Overview | 25 |
| 4.2.2 | The Information Zone | 25 |
| 4.2.3 | Access Model | 27 |
| 4.3 | BD-RE | 28 |
| 4.3.1 | Overview | 28 |
| 4.3.2 | The Information Zone | 28 |
| 4.3.3 | Physical Track Structure | 30 |
| 4.3.4 | Sectors and Clusters | 31 |
| 4.3.5 | Not Ready Conditions on BD-RE disc | 32 |
| 4.4 | BD-R | 33 |
| 4.4.1 | Overview | 33 |
| 4.4.2 | Information Area | 33 |
| 4.4.3 | Logical Structure | 35 |
| 4.4.4 | BD-R Recording Models | 39 |
| 4.4.5 | Using VNR with BD-R | 49 |
| 4.5 | Emergency Brake | 50 |
| 4.6 | Physical Access Control (PAC) | 51 |
| 4.6.1 | Overview | 51 |
| 4.6.2 | General PAC Format | 51 |
| 4.6.3 | Primary PAC | 52 |
| 4.6.4 | Disc Write Protect PAC | 53 |
| 4.7 | Timely Safe Recording (TSR) method | 58 |
| 4.7.1 | General | 58 |
| 4.7.2 | Two phase recording | 58 |
| 4.7.3 | Implementation notes for the Drive | 59 |
| 5 | Features and Profiles for BD Drives | 61 |
| 5.1 | Feature Descriptions | 61 |
| 5.1.1 | Write Protect Feature (0004h) | 61 |
| 5.1.2 | Incremental Streaming Writable Feature (0021h) | 62 |
| 5.1.3 | Formattable Feature (0023h) | 65 |
| 5.1.4 | BD-R Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) Feature | 67 |
| 5.1.5 | The BD Read Feature (0040h) | 68 |
| 5.1.6 | The BD Write Feature (0041h) | 70 |
| 5.1.7 | TSR Feature | 72 |
| 5.1.8 | Real Time Streaming Feature (0107h) | 73 |
| 5.2 | Profile Descriptions | 74 |
| 5.2.1 | Profile 0040h: BD-ROM | 74 |

| | | |
|--------|--|-----|
| 5.2.2 | Profile 0041h: BD-R Sequential Recording (SRM) Profile | 75 |
| 5.2.3 | Profile 0042h: BD-R Random Recording (RRM) Profile | 77 |
| 5.2.4 | Profile 0043h: BD-RE | 79 |
| 6 | Commands for BD Drives | 82 |
| 6.1 | Overview | 82 |
| 6.2 | CLOSE TRACK SESSION command | 83 |
| 6.2.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 83 |
| 6.2.2 | Command Execution | 83 |
| 6.3 | FORMAT UNIT | 85 |
| 6.3.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 85 |
| 6.3.2 | Format Parameter List..... | 86 |
| 6.3.3 | Command Execution | 88 |
| 6.4 | GET CONFIGURATION command | 97 |
| 6.5 | GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command..... | 97 |
| 6.6 | GET PERFORMANCE command | 98 |
| 6.6.1 | The CDB and its Parameters | 98 |
| 6.6.2 | Command Execution | 99 |
| 6.7 | INQUIRY command | 107 |
| 6.8 | MECHANISM STATUS command..... | 108 |
| 6.8.1 | Introduction..... | 108 |
| 6.8.2 | The CDB and its Parameters | 108 |
| 6.8.3 | Command Processing | 108 |
| 6.8.4 | Timeouts..... | 110 |
| 6.8.5 | Error Reporting | 110 |
| 6.9 | MODE SELECT (10) command..... | 111 |
| 6.10 | MODE SENSE (10) command | 111 |
| 6.11 | PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command..... | 111 |
| 6.12 | READ (10) command..... | 111 |
| 6.13 | READ (12) command..... | 111 |
| 6.14 | READ BUFFER CAPACITY command | 111 |
| 6.15 | READ CAPACITY command..... | 112 |
| 6.15.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 112 |
| 6.15.2 | Command Execution | 112 |
| 6.16 | READ DISC INFORMATION command..... | 114 |
| 6.16.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 114 |
| 6.16.2 | Command Execution | 115 |
| 6.17 | READ DISC STRUCTURE command..... | 123 |
| 6.17.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 123 |
| 6.17.2 | Command Execution | 124 |
| 6.18 | READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command | 140 |
| 6.18.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 140 |
| 6.18.2 | Command Execution | 140 |
| 6.19 | READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command | 145 |
| 6.19.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters | 145 |
| 6.19.2 | Command Execution | 146 |
| 6.20 | READ TRACK INFORMATION command | 149 |

| | | |
|--------|--|-----|
| 6.20.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 149 |
| 6.20.2 | Command Execution..... | 151 |
| 6.21 | REQUEST SENSE command..... | 156 |
| 6.22 | RESERVE TRACK command..... | 157 |
| 6.22.1 | Introduction | 157 |
| 6.22.2 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 157 |
| 6.22.3 | Command Execution..... | 159 |
| 6.23 | SEND DISC STRUCTURE command | 160 |
| 6.23.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 160 |
| 6.23.2 | command Execution | 160 |
| 6.24 | SEND OPC INFORMATION command | 164 |
| 6.25 | SET STREAMING command..... | 165 |
| 6.26 | START STOP UNIT command | 165 |
| 6.27 | SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command | 166 |
| 6.27.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 166 |
| 6.27.2 | Command Execution..... | 167 |
| 6.28 | TEST UNIT READY command | 168 |
| 6.29 | VERIFY (10) command | 168 |
| 6.30 | WRITE (10) command | 169 |
| 6.30.1 | The CDB and its Parameters..... | 169 |
| 6.30.2 | Command Execution..... | 170 |
| 6.31 | WRITE (12) command | 173 |
| 6.31.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 173 |
| 6.31.2 | Command Execution..... | 174 |
| 6.32 | WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command..... | 175 |
| 6.32.1 | The CDB and Its Parameters..... | 175 |
| 6.32.2 | Command Execution..... | 175 |
| 7 | Mode parameters for BD Drives..... | 176 |
| 7.1 | Mode Parameter List..... | 176 |
| 7.2 | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (Page Code 01h)..... | 176 |
| 7.2.1 | Introduction | 176 |
| 7.2.2 | The mode page and its parameters..... | 176 |
| 7.3 | Power Condition mode page (Page Code 1Ah)..... | 178 |
| 7.4 | Timeout & Protect mode page (Page Code 1Dh)..... | 178 |

Figures

Figure 1 — The Areas of a BD..... 22

Figure 2 — Primary Zones of a Single Layer BD disc 23

Figure 3 — Primary Zones of a Dual Layer BD disc..... 23

Figure 4 — BD-ROM Information Zone 25

Figure 5 — BD-RE Zones 28

Figure 6 — Layout of Single Layer BD-RE Disc 30

Figure 7 — Layout of Dual Layer BD-RE Disc..... 31

Figure 8 — BD-R Zones..... 33

Figure 9 — SL BD-R Information Zone..... 35

Figure 10 — TDMA Allocation on SL BD-R..... 36

Figure 11 — DL BD-R Zones 36

Figure 12 — TDMA Allocation on DL BD-R..... 37

Figure 13 — TDMA Access Indicators on Single Layer Disc..... 38

Figure 14 — TDMA Access Indicators on Dual Layer Disc 38

Figure 15 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 0 41

Figure 16 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 1 41

Figure 17 — Status of a BD-R Disc After Formatting in SRM 42

Figure 18 — Status of BD-R Disc after first RESERVE TRACK command..... 42

Figure 19 — Status of BD-R Disc after multiple RESERVE TRACK commands 42

Figure 20 — Status of BD-R Disc after Closing Session 1 43

Figure 21 — Status after Formatting SRM+POW 44

Figure 22 — Create, Write, and Close Small Outer Logical Track 44

Figure 23 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 1 45

Figure 24 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 2 45

Figure 25 — Status after Writing to each Logical Track 46

Figure 26 — Status after POW to LBA 128 46

Figure 27 — Status after writing to Logical Track 1 47

Figure 28 — Status after POW of LBA 160 47

Figure 29 — Parts of a POWed Cluster 48

Figure 30 — POW and Append Parts of WRITE 49

Figure 31 — Physical and Virtual Write Protect State Diagram..... 56

Tables

| | |
|---|----|
| Table 1 — BD Disc Capacities | 23 |
| Table 2 — Behavior of reading of a Blank Cluster | 24 |
| Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions | 32 |
| Table 4 — General PAC Format | 51 |
| Table 5 — Write Protect Control Byte | 53 |
| Table 6 — Examples of Drive/Host Interaction | 55 |
| Table 7 — Changing the Write Protect Password..... | 57 |
| Table 8 — Write Protect Feature Descriptor | 61 |
| Table 9 — Write Protect Feature commands | 62 |
| Table 10 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Descriptor Format..... | 62 |
| Table 11 — Meaning of TRIO bit..... | 63 |
| Table 12 — Meaning of ARSV bit..... | 63 |
| Table 13 — Command Support Required by the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature..... | 64 |
| Table 14 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Parameters | 64 |
| Table 15 — Formattable Feature Descriptor..... | 65 |
| Table 16 — Formattable Feature commands..... | 66 |
| Table 17 — Pseudo-OverWrite Feature Descriptor | 67 |
| Table 18 — Pseudo OverWrite Feature commands | 67 |
| Table 19 — BD Read Feature Descriptor | 68 |
| Table 20 — Command Support Required by the BD Read Feature | 69 |
| Table 21 — BD Write Feature Descriptor..... | 70 |
| Table 22 — Command Support Required by the BD Write Feature | 71 |
| Table 23 — TSR Feature Descriptor | 72 |
| Table 24 — Command Support Required by the TSR Feature | 72 |
| Table 25 — TSR Feature Parameters..... | 72 |
| Table 26 — Real Time Streaming Feature Descriptor | 73 |
| Table 27 — Command Support Required by the Real Time Streaming Feature..... | 73 |
| Table 28 — Mandatory Features for BD-ROM..... | 74 |
| Table 29 — BD-ROM Profile Decomposition | 74 |
| Table 30 — Features for BD-R SRM Profile | 75 |
| Table 31 — BD-R SRM Profile Decomposition | 76 |
| Table 32 — Features for BD-R RRM Profile | 77 |
| Table 33 — BD-R RRM Profile Decomposition..... | 78 |
| Table 34 — Mandatory Features for BD-RE | 79 |
| Table 35 — BD-RE Profile Decomposition..... | 80 |
| Table 36 — Commands for BD Multi-Media Drives | 82 |
| Table 37 — CLOSE TRACK SESSION CDB..... | 83 |
| Table 38 — FORMAT UNIT command descriptor block..... | 85 |
| Table 39 — Format Unit Parameter List..... | 86 |
| Table 40 — Format List Header | 86 |
| Table 41 — Format Code 001b Format Descriptor | 87 |
| Table 42 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 00h)..... | 88 |
| Table 43 — Format Sub-type Field | 88 |
| Table 44 — Example of Default Allocations for Format Type = 00h, Format Sub-type = 00b..... | 89 |

| | |
|---|-----|
| Table 45 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 30h)..... | 90 |
| Table 46 — Format Sub-type Field..... | 90 |
| Table 47 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-RE | 91 |
| Table 48 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 31h)..... | 93 |
| Table 49 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 32h)..... | 94 |
| Table 50 — Format Sub-type Field..... | 94 |
| Table 51 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-R..... | 95 |
| Table 52 — GET PERFORMANCE CDB | 98 |
| Table 53 — Type Field Definitions..... | 99 |
| Table 54 — Performance response format..... | 99 |
| Table 55 — Performance Header | 99 |
| Table 56 — Data Type Field Definitions for Type = 00h..... | 101 |
| Table 57 — Performance Descriptor – Nominal Performance | 101 |
| Table 58 — Performance Descriptor – Exceptions..... | 102 |
| Table 59 — Data Type Field Values for Unusable Area data..... | 102 |
| Table 60 — Performance Descriptor for Unusable Area data | 103 |
| Table 61 — Defect Status Descriptor | 104 |
| Table 62 — Write Speed Descriptor | 105 |
| Table 63 — Write Rotation Control values..... | 105 |
| Table 64 — Features Associated with the MECHANISM STATUS command..... | 108 |
| Table 65 — MECHANISM STATUS CDB..... | 108 |
| Table 66 — Mechanism Status Parameter List Format..... | 109 |
| Table 67 — Mechanism Status Header | 109 |
| Table 68 — Changer State Field | 109 |
| Table 69 — Mechanism State Field..... | 109 |
| Table 70 — Slot Table Format..... | 110 |
| Table 71 — Recommended errors for Mechanism Status command..... | 110 |
| Table 72 — READ CAPACITY CDB..... | 112 |
| Table 73 — READ CAPACITY Response Data..... | 112 |
| Table 74 — READ CAPACITY LBA..... | 113 |
| Table 75 — READ DISC INFORMATION CDB | 114 |
| Table 76 — Disc Information Data Types..... | 114 |
| Table 77 — Standard Disc Information Block..... | 115 |
| Table 78 — DIB of BD-ROM Discs | 116 |
| Table 79 — DIB of BD-RE Discs | 117 |
| Table 80 — DIB of a Blank BD-R Disc..... | 118 |
| Table 81 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM-POW or SRM+POW | 119 |
| Table 82 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM | 120 |
| Table 83 — Track Resources Disc Information Block | 121 |
| Table 84 — POW Resources Disc Information Block..... | 122 |
| Table 85 — READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB | 123 |
| Table 86 — Format Code Definitions..... | 124 |
| Table 87 — BD Structure Returned Data Format..... | 124 |
| Table 88 — BD Structure Format Code 00h: Disc Information..... | 125 |
| Table 89 — Disc Information Data Format | 125 |
| Table 90 — General DI Unit Format | 125 |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Contents

| | |
|--|-----|
| Table 91 — BD Structure Format Code 08h: Disc Definition Structure | 127 |
| Table 92 — Format of the DDS | 128 |
| Table 93 — BD Format Structure Code 09h: Cartridge Status | 129 |
| Table 94 — Format Code 0Ah: Spare Area Information | 130 |
| Table 95 — BD Structure Format Code 12h: Defect List | 131 |
| Table 96 — General DFL Format | 132 |
| Table 97 — PAC ID and Format Number in CDB Address Field | 133 |
| Table 98 — PAC ID and Format Number Fields | 133 |
| Table 99 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID/Format = 000000h/00h | 134 |
| Table 100 — Returned Data Format for 000001h ≤ PAC ID ≤ FFFFFFFEh | 134 |
| Table 101 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID = FFFFFFFFh | 135 |
| Table 102 — Primary PAC | 136 |
| Table 103 — DWP PAC | 137 |
| Table 104 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = C0h)..... | 138 |
| Table 105 — BD Structure Format Code FFh: BD Structure List | 139 |
| Table 106 — Structure List Entry | 139 |
| Table 107 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES CDB..... | 140 |
| Table 108 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Data Format | 140 |
| Table 109 — Capacity List Header..... | 141 |
| Table 110 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor..... | 141 |
| Table 111 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-R..... | 142 |
| Table 112 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-RE | 142 |
| Table 113 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-ROM..... | 142 |
| Table 114 — Formattable Capacity Descriptor | 143 |
| Table 115 — Formattable Capacity Descriptors Returned for BD-R and BD-RE | 143 |
| Table 116 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB | 145 |
| Table 117 — TOC Data Format 0: Data Returned for formatted BD-ROM disc | 146 |
| Table 118 — BD-R Track Translation for READ TOC/PMA/ATIP | 147 |
| Table 119 — TOC Data Format 0: Data Returned for formatted BD-R discs | 147 |
| Table 120 — TOC Data Format 1: Data Returned for BD Discs..... | 148 |
| Table 121 — READ TRACK INFORMATION CDB..... | 149 |
| Table 122 — Addressed Track (T _A) According to LBA/Track/Session Number Field..... | 149 |
| Table 123 — Track Information Block | 151 |
| Table 124 — TIB Fields for BD-ROM Discs | 152 |
| Table 125 — TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM | 153 |
| Table 126 — TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM | 154 |
| Table 127 — TIB Fields for formatted BD-RE Discs | 155 |
| Table 128 — RESERVE TRACK CDB..... | 157 |
| Table 129 — Reservation Size form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter..... | 157 |
| Table 130 — LBA form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter | 158 |
| Table 131 — Track Creation from the Invisible/Incomplete Track | 159 |
| Table 132 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE command descriptor block..... | 160 |
| Table 133 — Format Field Definitions for Media Type = 0001b..... | 160 |
| Table 134 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format Code = 0Fh)..... | 161 |
| Table 135 — Physical Access Control Send Data Format..... | 162 |
| Table 136 — DWP PAC | 163 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Table 137 — SEND OPC INFORMATION command descriptor block | 164 |
| Table 138 — Drive Action with Combinations of DoOPC, Exclude0, and Exclude1 | 164 |
| Table 139 — Features Associated with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command | 166 |
| Table 140 — SYNCHRONIZE CACHE CDB | 166 |
| Table 141 — WRITE (10) CDB | 169 |
| Table 142 — WRITE (12) CDB | 173 |
| Table 143 — WRITE AND VERIFY (10) CDB | 175 |
| Table 144 — Features Associated with the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page | 176 |
| Table 145 — Read-Write Error Recovery mode page Format | 176 |

This page is intentionally blank

1 Scope

Blu-ray Disc is a media type that requires special behavior by the Host and Drive. Blu-ray disc has three defined types: Read-only (BD-ROM), Recordable (BD-R), and Rewritable (BD-RE).

This document describes the set of Multi-Media commands that allow a Host to utilize the capabilities of BD Drives. This document is created assuming MMC-4 as a basis. The ultimate destination for the content of this document is MMC-5.

This document is created to match the structure of MMC-4:

1. Scope — This section
2. References — A list of documents that may be needed by the reader for the correct understanding of this document.
3. Definitions and Abbreviations — A glossary of terminology unique to this document
4. BD Models — Modeling for the various media oriented behaviors that the Host may witness from the Drive provides an overview of internal Drive operation to the Host application developer.
5. Features and Profiles — Features describe Drive capability while Profiles define a general Drive view.
6. Commands for BD Drives — Commands are described from the Host's point of view.
7. Mode Parameters for BD Drives — Inputs required by the Drive are not always a part of a command. Inputs associated with mode of operation are readable and sometimes writable.

This page is intentionally blank

2 References

2.1 Normative References

2.1.1 Approved References

The following are approved ANSI, approved international and approved regional publications (ISO, IEC, CEN/CENELEC, and ITUT), and may be obtained from the international and regional organizations that control them.

| | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| ANSI INCITS 397-2005 | AT Attachment with Packet Interface 7 (ATA/ATAPI-7) Volume 1: ATA Command Set Volume 2: Parallel ATA Volume 3: Serial ATA |
| ANSI NCITS.351:2001 | SCSI-3 Primary Commands (SPC-2) |
| ANSI INCITS 401:2005 | SCSI-3 MultiMedia Command Set 4 (MMC-4) |
| ANSI NCITS.306:1998 | SCSI-3 Block Command Set (SBC) |
| ISO/IEC 646:1991 | Information technology - ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange (third edition). See also: ANSI INCITS 4-1986 (R2002) Information Systems - Coded Character Sets - 7-Bit American National Standard Code for Information Interchange (7-Bit ASCII) |
| ECMA 167, 3 rd Edition | Volume and File Structure for Write-Once and Write-Once Media using Non-Sequential Recording for Information Interchange |

2.1.2 References Under Development

At the time of publication, the following referenced standards were still under development. For information on the current status of the document, or regarding availability, contact the relevant standards body or other organization as indicated.

| | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| INCITS T10/1416D | SCSI Primary Command Set - 3 (SPC-3) |
| INCITS T10/1417D | SCSI Block Command Set - 2 (SBC-2) |

For more information on the current status of the above documents, contact INCITS Secretariat, 1250 Eye Street NW, Suite 200, Washington, DC 20005, Phone Number (202) 737-8888. To obtain copies of these documents, contact Global Engineering at (303) 792-2181 or INCITS Secretariat.

2.2 Other References

The following are published by Optical Storage Technology Association. For more information, see www.osta.org.

Universal Disk Format™ Specification, Revision 2.6

The following are published by the Blu-ray Disc Association (for availability, consult www.blu-raydisc.info):

- System Description Blu-ray Disc Read-only Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.3

- System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 2.1

- System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.1

3 Definitions and Abbreviations

3.1 General

The Definitions, Symbols, Abbreviations, and Conventions described in MMC-4 are valid within this document. The Definitions, Symbols, Abbreviations, and Conventions described in this clause are in addition to those found in MMC-4. In the event of duplication, this document shall rule.

3.2 Terms

3.2.1 ADIP (Address In Pre-groove)

Address and recording information encoded in the wobble pre-groove on BD-R, and BD-RE media is named the Address in pre-groove (ADIP).

3.2.2 BD

Blu-ray Disc (BD) is a high capacity system that defines media and includes devices capable of reading such media and optionally writing to writable types of that media. A 120 mm BD disc may contain one or two layers with defined layer capacities of 25.0 gB. An 80 mm BD disc may contain one or two layers with a defined layer capacity of 7.8 gB.

3.2.3 BD-ROM

A BD-ROM disc is a read-only BD disc.

3.2.4 BD-R

BD-R disc is a BD disc that is write once in increments of 65 536 bytes.

3.2.5 BD-RE

BD-RE disc is a BD disc that is Rewritable.

3.2.6 Block (Logical Block)

A block (or logical block) consists of only the user data part of a sector.

3.2.7 Certification

Certification is a function defined for the Hardware Defect Management Feature. A Writable Unit is optionally written and then read. Vendor specific rules define a test for the read reliability of the writable unit. If the writable unit fails the test, the writable unit is registered into the hardware defect management system as defective. Otherwise, the writable unit is certified as good.

3.2.8 Cluster

A BD Cluster contains 32 logical sectors. The data of these 32 sectors are interleaved, scrambled, and EDC and ECC symbols are attached.

3.2.9 Defect List (DFL).

The Defect List exists to map defective Clusters to non-defective spare Clusters on BD-R and BD-RE discs. When a BD-R disc is formatted with the Pseudo-Overwrite capability, the DFL is also used to map replacement Clusters.

3.2.10 Disc/Defect Management Structure (DMS)

The DMS contains structures that define the disc format and that are necessary for defect management.

On BD-R there are two kinds of Disc Management Structures:

1. The Temporary Disc Management Structures (TDMS), recorded in the TDMA Areas as long as the disc has not been closed.
2. Disc Management Structures (DMS), recorded in the DMA Areas when a disc is closed (to preserve all Disc Management information contained in the last Temporary Disc Management Structure).

On BD-RE the Defect Management Structure is written and updated in the DMAs of the inner and Outer Zones.

3.2.11 Disc Definition Structure (DDS)

The DDS, a structure in the DMA (and in the TDMA), contains basic format information about the disc: the physical location of LSN 0, the physical location of the last LSN, and the sizes of the spare areas.

On BD-R, the DDS also contains recording mode and TDMA information.

3.2.12 Drive

A Drive that operates as a single MM disc accessing unit (e.g., a BD-R Drive).

3.2.13 Embossed Area

An Embossed Area is an area on the disc where information has been stored during the disc manufacturing process by means of either a High Frequency Modulated (HFM) Groove or by means of pits and space.

The recording in an embossed area cannot be modified by a recording device.

3.2.14 Full Certification

As a part of the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command on a rewritable disc, the Drive may certify each writable unit in each of the Data Zones. This is Full Certification.

3.2.15 Host

A Host is a SCSI device with the characteristics of a primary computing device, typically a personal computer, workstation, minicomputer, mainframe computer, or auxiliary computing device or server. A Host includes one or more SCSI initiator devices.

3.2.16 Inner Spare Area (ISA0, ISA1)

When defect management is used on BD-R or BD-RE, a spare area may be allocated in the inner radius of each layer. Each of these areas is an Inner Spare Area (ISA). The ISA on layer 0 is referenced as ISA0, while the ISA on layer 1 is referenced as ISA1.

3.2.17 Logical Overwrite (LOW)

LOW is defined in *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications* as the physical description of Pseudo-Overwrite. See the Pseudo-Overwrite definition.

3.2.18 Logical Sector Number (LSN)

A sector's LBA is referred to as LSN in some BD references.

3.2.19 Orphan LBA(s)

When a POW is executed, the relocation occurs at the NWA, N of some SRR, T. After the POW execution, the NWA is now $N+32*K$, where K is the number of POWed Clusters. LBAs N, N+1, ..., $N+32*K-1$ cannot be used in the next appending write to T. Consequently, these LBAs may be used

only by additional POW operations. However, since there is not previous data to replace, these LBAs are Orphans.

3.2.20 Outer Spare Area (OSA0, OSA1)

When defect management is used on BD-R or BD-RE, a spare area may be allocated in the outer radius of each layer. Each of these areas is an Outer Spare Area (OSA). The OSA on layer 0 is referenced as OSA0, while the OSA on layer 1 is referenced as OSA1.

3.2.21 Permanent Information & Control data (PIC) Zone

This Zone contains general information about the disc. The PIC is embossed on all disc types.

3.2.22 Physical Sector Number (PSN)

When the total number of possible sectors on a media (even those not typically accessible) is N, physical sector numbering is a one-to-one mapping of the set 0, 1, 2, ...N-1 to the entire set of sectors. No device function (e.g. defect management) may change this mapping.

3.2.23 Pseudo-Overwrite (POW)

By using the Linear Replacement algorithm of the BD-R system, overwriting of a recorded Cluster is allowed. POW replacements are taken from the user data area and mapped using DFL. (POW is only defined for SRM formatted BD-R discs.)

3.2.24 Quick Certification

If a FORMAT UNIT command is issued by the Host for a BD-RE disc that was previously formatted, then the requested process is a reformat. Before starting the reformat, the DFL contains a list of Clusters that have been determined to be defective. As a part of the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command that is requesting a reformat, the Drive may certify only Clusters registered in the DFL as defective. Since this process requires significantly less execution time than Full Certification, it is called Quick Certification.

3.2.25 Quick Reformat

If a FORMAT UNIT command is issued by the Host for a BD-RE disc that was previously formatted, then the requested process is a reformat. Before starting the reformat, the DFL contains a list of Clusters that have been determined to be defective.

If a FORMAT UNIT command requests a quick reformat, the Drive shall convert each registered defective Cluster information on the disc to a re-usable Cluster status and perform no certification. The Drive shall certify a Cluster that is registered as re-usable only when executing a non-streamed write. Since this process can make a reformat execute much faster than Quick Certification, this process is called Quick Reformat.

3.2.26 Random Recording Mode (RRM)

In the BD-R Random Recording Mode, data can be randomly written at every un-recorded Cluster.

3.2.27 Recordable Unit

MM media design permits reading a single sector. The minimum number of sectors that may be recorded in a single write action is typically larger than one sector. For a given media type the minimum number of contiguous sectors that may be recorded in a single write action is a Recordable Unit.

3.2.28 Sector

A BD sector contains control information, one logical block, and logical block EDC.

3.2.29 Sequential Recording Mode (SRM)

Sequential Recording Mode is defined for BD-R to implement the generalized track/session model defined by MMC for implementation of the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature.

3.2.30 SRM+POW

A BD-R disc has the SRM+POW status when it has been formatted as SRM with the POW Feature enabled.

3.2.31 SRM-POW

A BD-R disc has the SRM-POW status when it has been formatted as SRM without the POW Feature enabled.

3.2.32 Sequential Recording Range (SRR)

Sequential Recording Range (SRR) is the physical definition of Logical Track for a BD-R in SRM.

3.2.33 Sequential Recording Range Information (SRR)

Information about the location and status of all SRRs are stored in the Sequential Recording Range Information (SRR) structures. While the disc is not finalized, the SRR shall be recorded in the Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMAs). At finalization, the most recent version of the SRR is recorded in the Disc Management Area (DMA).

3.2.34 Space Bit Map (SBM)

A Space Bit Map specifies the recording status for a Recording Layer a BD-R disc formatted in Random Recording Mode (RRM).

3.2.35 Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA)

On BD-R, the defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose special areas are available in the Lead-in/Lead-out Area called the Temporary Disc Management Area. Additional TDMAs may be defined within spare areas.

3.2.36 Temporary Disc Management Structure (TDMS)

On BD-R, the Temporary Disc Management Structure (TDMS) is a version of the DMS recorded in a TDMA. The TDMS consists of the following three elements depending on the recording mode.

For sequential recording mode the TDMS consists of:

1. Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS),
2. Temporary Defect List (TDFL),
3. Sequential Recording Range Information (SRR).

For random recording mode the TDMS consists of:

1. Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS),
2. Temporary Defect List (TDFL),
3. Space Bit Maps (SBM).

All of these elements shall be present in the TDMA currently in use. Whenever a disc leaves a recorder, the TDMS shall correctly reflect the current status of the disc.

3.2.37 Writable Unit

A writable media has a minimum physically writable amount of data. When expressed as an integral number of logical blocks, this is a writable unit. On BD media, the writable unit is a Cluster.

3.2.38 Zone

A zone is a physically contiguous region of the disc spiral. The Information Zone of a dual layer disc in OTP is considered physically contiguous.

3.3 Abbreviations

| | | | |
|--------|----------------------------------|------|--|
| ADIP | Address In Pre-groove | LSN | Logical Sector Number |
| BCA | Burst Cutting Area | OSA0 | Outer Spare Area, layer 0 |
| BD | Blu-ray Disc | OSA1 | Outer Spare Area, layer 1 |
| BD-R | Blu-ray Disc Recordable | PAC | Physical Access Control |
| BD-RE | Blu-ray Disc Rewritable | PIC | Permanent Information & Control data |
| BD-ROM | Blu-ray Disc Read-only | POW | Pseudo-Overwrite |
| DDS | Disc Definition Structure | PSN | Physical Sector Number |
| DFL(x) | Defect List (x=0..7) | RRM | Random Recording Mode |
| DI | Disc Information | SBM | Space Bit Map |
| DL | Dual Layer | SL | Single Layer |
| DMA(x) | Disc Management Area (x=1..4) | SRM | Sequential Recording Mode |
| DMS | Disc/Defect Management Structure | SRR | Sequential Recording Range |
| EB | Emergency Brake | SRRI | Sequential Recording Range Information |
| INFOx | Control Information (x=1..4) | TDDS | Temporary Disc Definition Structure |
| ISA0 | Inner Spare Area, layer 0 | TDFL | Temporary Defect List |
| ISA1 | Inner Spare Area, layer 1 | TDMA | Temporary Disc Management Area |
| L0 | Layer 0 | TDMS | Temporary Disc Management Structure |
| L1 | Layer 1 | | |

This page is intentionally blank

4 BD Models

4.1 General

4.1.1 Physical Structure

Blu-ray Disc (BD) is a collection of high-density optical media: ROM (Read-Only Memory), R (write-once Recordable), and RE (Rewritable). The general characteristics of BD are:

- A BD disc may have a diameter of either 80 mm or 120 mm.
- A BD disc may be constructed as either one layer or two layers.
- Each layer has a continuous spiral track.
- In the case of two layers, the BD disc is constructed only as opposite track path (OTP).
- 120 mm BD media can have 25.0 gB per layer.
- 80 mm BD media can have 7.8 gB per layer.
- The capacity of a dual layer disc is twice the single layer capacity.

A BD disc is separated into areas as shown in Figure 1.

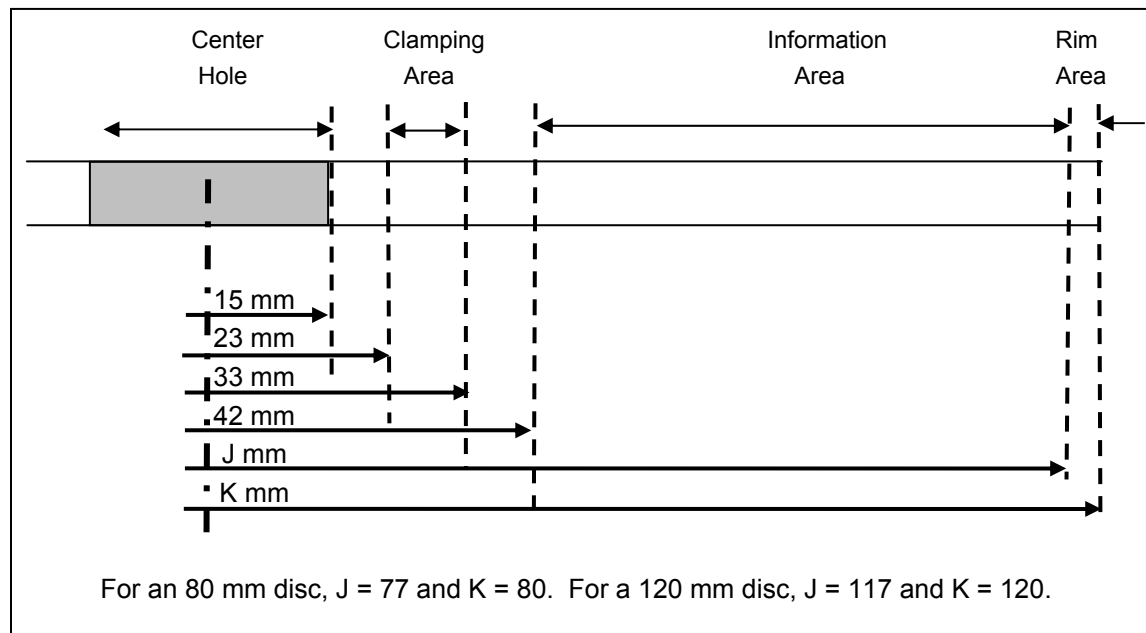


Figure 1 — The Areas of a BD

The Center Hole, Transition Areas and Clamping Area are all part of the alignment and clamping mechanisms. These areas have no direct involvement with the writable areas of the BD disc.

The Information Area is the area in which recorded information may be present. It contains the Lead-in area, the Data Zone, and the Lead-out area. The Information Area begins at a nominal diameter of 42 mm and proceeds to the outer diameter. For 120 mm media, the Information Area ends at a nominal diameter of 117 mm, whereas the 80 mm media Information Area ends at a nominal diameter of 77 mm. The Rim Area is simply the area beyond the data spiral. 120 mm media typically ends at a diameter of 120 mm. 80 mm media typically ends at a diameter of 80 mm.

4.1.2 Spiral Structure

The information area of the first layer (layer 0) of a Blu-ray disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The information area of the second layer (layer 1) of a Blu-ray disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius.

Each information zone of a recorded BD disc is a sequence of logical blocks. Logical blocks are collected into Recordable Units called Clusters:

- The logical block size is 2 048 bytes.
- A Cluster contains 32 logical blocks. The data of these 32 blocks are interleaved, scrambled, and EDC and ECC symbols are attached. The resulting structure is the physical Cluster.
- The error correction for user data within a BD sector is protected by the error correction coding in the Cluster that contains the sector.
- Logical Block Address (LBA) mapping to physical addresses (PSN) is dependent upon specific BD media type, i.e. ROM, R, RE.

4.1.2.1 Primary Zones

Each layer is separated into 3 primary areas: Inner, Data, and Outer.

On single layer discs, the Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-in and the Outer Zone is used as the disc Lead-out. See Figure 2.

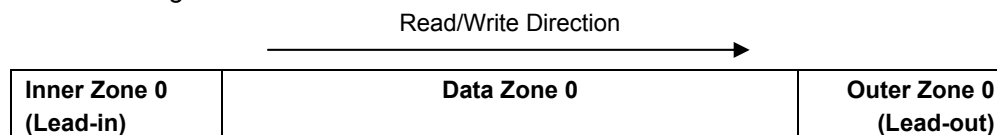


Figure 2 — Primary Zones of a Single Layer BD disc

On dual layer discs, the layer 0 Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-in and the layer 1 Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-out. The two Outer Zones are used as layer transition zones. See Figure 3.

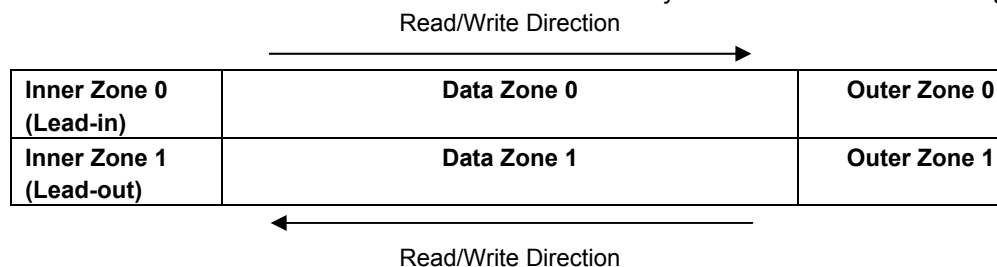


Figure 3 — Primary Zones of a Dual Layer BD disc

4.1.2.2 Capacity

BD capacity is determined by the size of the Data Zones. Possible BD disc capacities are shown in Table 1.

Table 1 — BD Disc Capacities

| Diameter | Single Layer | Dual Layer |
|--------------------|--------------|------------|
| 80 mm ¹ | 7.8 gB | 15.6 gB |
| 120 mm | 25.0 gB | 50.0 gB |

¹ 80 mm is not a defined size for BD-ROM

4.1.2.3 ADIP

The spiral of each layer of a BD-R or BD-RE disc is defined with a fixed frequency wobbled groove. The wobble contains modulated location information called Address In Pre-groove (ADIP).

In the Inner Zones, the ADIP address information is interleaved with disc information called Disc Information (DI) frames. The collection of DI frames contains information about the logical disc structure as well as recording parameters.

The DI is repeated in embossed areas that occur prior to the Inner Zones.

4.1.2.4 Un-recorded Sector Addressing

In all recording modes, seek to any sector shall be supported by all BD Drives. Neither Lead-in Zone and/or Lead-out Zone need to be completely written.

4.1.2.4.1 Returned data for Un-recorded sector reading

The Table 2 shows the returned value when the Host requests to read the blank sector on a BD-R/RE medium.

Table 2 — Behavior of reading of a Blank Cluster

| Media | Recording mode | | Behavior of reading of a blank Cluster |
|-------|----------------|----------------------|--|
| BD-RE | - | | If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data. |
| BD-R | RRM | | If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data. |
| | SRM-POW | Closed Logical Track | If a Logical Track is closed, it may contain some blank Clusters. If the Host chooses to read a sector from a blank Cluster of a closed Logical Track, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data. |
| | | Open Logical Track | If a Host requests to read a sector from a blank Cluster of an open Logical Track, the Drive should return Blank Check error (SK/ASC/ASCQ should be 08/00/00). |
| | SRM+POW | | If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data regardless of state of SRR (Open or Closed). |

4.2 BD-ROM

4.2.1 Overview

BD-ROM disc is a read-only media with the general BD structure.

4.2.2 The Information Zone

The information zone of a dual layer BD-ROM disc (Figure 4) is the accessible spirals.

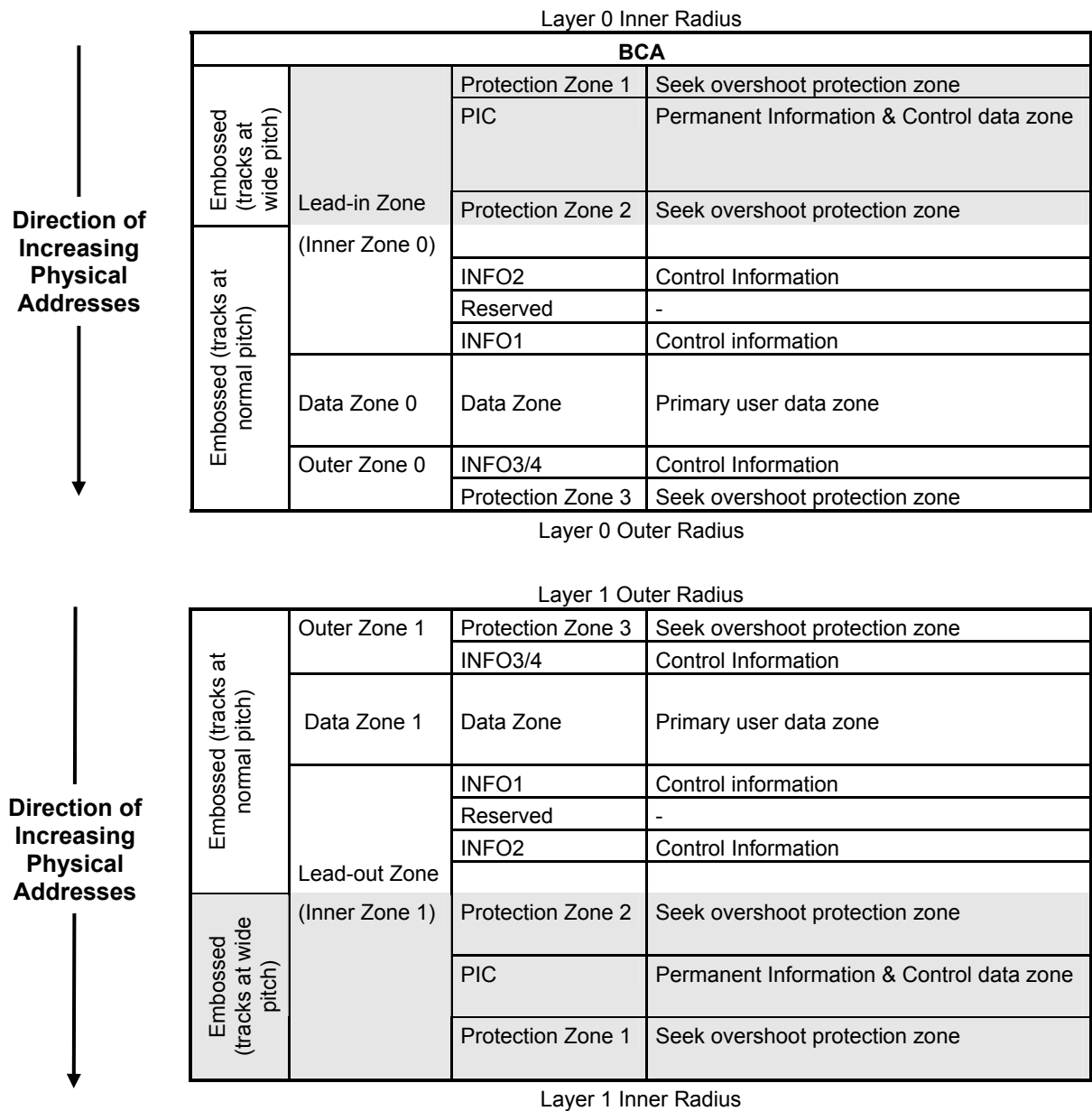


Figure 4 — BD-ROM Information Zone

4.2.2.1 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

BCA The Burst Cutting Area (BCA), if present, contains application specific information.

4.2.2.2 Embossed Zone (tracks at wide pitch)

The Embossed area consists of:

| | |
|---|--|
| Protection Zone 1 | This zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's inner radius. |
| Permanent Information & Control data zone (PIC) | On layer zero, this embossed zone contains disc information that includes, but is not restricted to: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Physical media Class and Version2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone3. Physical address of the start of the Outer Zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out)4. Number of layers5. Recording Density On dual layer discs, the same information is embossed in the PIC zone on layer 1. |
| Protection Zone 2 | This zone is a buffer area between the 2 track pitches. The first part of this zone has wide pitch. |

4.2.2.3 Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in Zone)/Inner Zone 1 (Lead-out Zone)

An Inner Zone consists of:

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| Protection Zone 2 | This zone is a buffer area between the 2 track pitches. The second part of this zone has normal pitch. |
| INFO2 | This zone is intended to contain information specific to the application. |
| Reserved | This zone is reserved. Each Cluster contains only zeros. |
| INFO1 | This zone is intended to contain control information. |

4.2.2.4 Data Zone

The data zone contains application data that is readable by the Host as a sequence of sectors.

4.2.2.5 Outer Zone 0 (Lead-out Zone)/Outer Zone 1

On single layer media the Outer Zone has the function of the Lead-out Zone.

On dual layer media, the Outer Zone 0 and Outer Zone 1 are layer transition zones on layer 0 and layer 1, respectively.

The Outer Zone consists of:

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| INFO3/4 | This zone is intended to contain control information. |
| Protection Zone 3 | This zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's outer radius. |

4.2.3 Access Model

BD-ROM discs may consist of one or two layers. In the case of two layers, the user area of each media appears to the Host as a single continuous address space.

The access model for BD-ROM is based upon the random access read-only device model:

- The user data space is organized in fixed size blocks (2 048 bytes/block) and addressed as logical blocks. LBA 0 is fixed at PSN = 00100000h.
- Blocks in this Logical Block Address space may be read using only the READ (10) and READ (12) commands.
- Logical Block Addresses are numbered from 0 through READ CAPACITY LBA. The value of READ CAPACITY LBA is the Logical Block Address returned by the READ CAPACITY command.
- The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is implemented to assure compatibility with existing applications. Only formats 0 and 1 are implemented. Some structures may be fabricated.
- Structures unique to BD may be read using the READ DISC STRUCTURES command.

4.3 BD-RE

4.3.1 Overview

BD-RE is a rewritable media with the general BD structure. The default format for BD-RE enables the Removable Disk Profile. The Removable Disk Profile includes the Hardware Defect Management Feature, the Random Readable Feature - with a 2 048 byte block size, and the Random Writable Feature - with a 2 048 byte block size.

It is also possible to format a BD-RE disc without spare areas allocated for mastering applications.

4.3.2 The Information Zone

The information area of a dual layer BD-RE disc (Figure 5) is the accessible spirals.

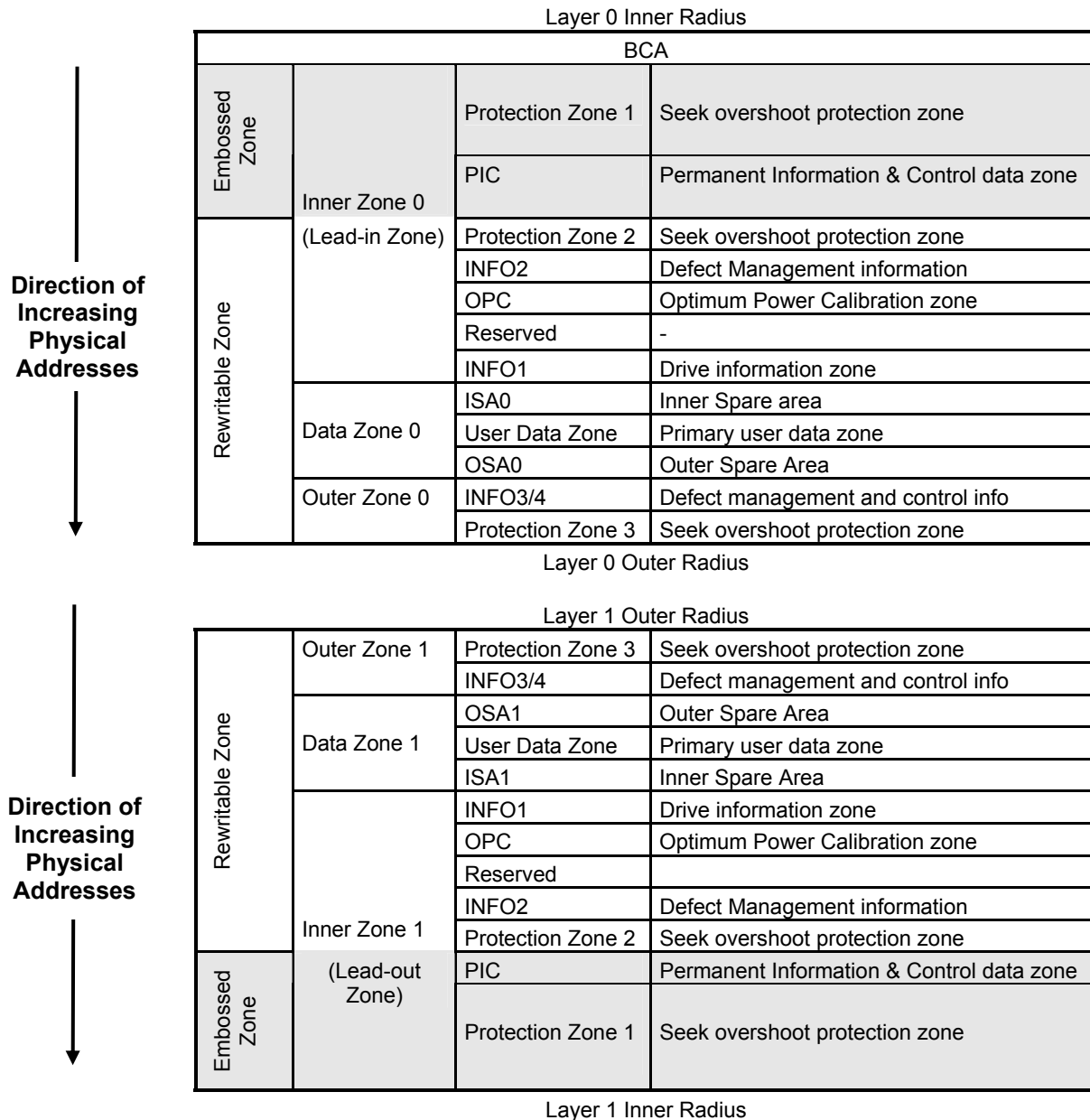


Figure 5 — BD-RE Zones

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Each layer of the Information Zone is divided into an embossed HFM area and a rewritable area. The rewritable area of layer 0 is divided into a Lead-in zone, a data zone, and an Outer Zone. On single layer media, the Outer Zone 0 is the disc Lead-out zone. On dual layer media the Outer Zone 0/1 are layer transition area.

4.3.2.1 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

Burst Cutting Area (BCA) The BCA is used to add information to the disc after completion of the manufacturing process. The BCA-code can be written by a high-power laser system in case of Recordable discs.

4.3.2.2 Embossed HFM Zone

The Embossed HFM zone consists of:

Permanent Information & Control data zone (PIC) On layer zero, this embossed zone contains disc information that includes, but is not restricted to:

1. Physical media Class and Version
2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone
3. Physical address of the start of the Outer Zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out)
4. Number of layers
5. Recording Density
6. Write power information

On layer 1 this embossed zone contains a copy of the layer 0 information, but the physical addresses refer to physical addresses on layer 1.

4.3.2.3 Inner Zone 0/Inner Zone 1 (Lead-in Zone/Lead-out Zone)

An Inner Zone consists of:

Protection Zone 2 On both layers, this zone buffers the rewritable area from the embossed zone.

INFO2 On both layers, INFO2 is reserved for defect management information and PAC storage.

Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) Zone On both layers, the OPC Zone is reserved for testing and calibration.

INFO1 On both layers, this zone is reserved for Drive specific information and PAC storage.

4.3.2.4 Data Zone

The Data Zone consists of:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Inner Spare Areas (ISA0, ISA1) | If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then ISA0 is allocated with 4 096 Clusters. If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, ISA1 is an area available for spare area allocation in 256 Cluster increments. Any part of the data zone that is not allocated for spare Clusters is part of the User Data Zone. |
| User Data Zone | The User Data Zone is the logically addressed area of the disc. |
| Outer Spare Areas (OSA0, OSA1) | If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, OSA0 is an area available for spare area allocation in 256 Cluster increments. OSA1 is the same size as OSA0. |

4.3.2.5 Lead-out Zone/Outer Zone 0/Outer Zone 1

On single layer media the Outer Zone has the function of the Lead-out Zone.

On dual layer media, the Outer Zone 0 and Outer Zone 1 are layer transition zones on layer 0 and layer 1, respectively.

The Outer Zone consists of:

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| INFO3/4 | On both layers, INFO3/4 is reserved for defect management and control information. |
| Protection Zone 3 | On both layers, this zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's outer radius. |

4.3.3 Physical Track Structure

BD-RE physical track structure has the general BD disc structure with additional format entities defined uniquely for BD-RE.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zone, creating three areas within the Data Zone: Inner Spare Area (ISA0), User Data Zone, and Outer Spare Area (OSA0).

If ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4096 Clusters. OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 16384 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters. Consequently, OSA0 size in Clusters = $N \times 256$ Clusters, where $0 \leq N \leq 64$. See Figure 6.

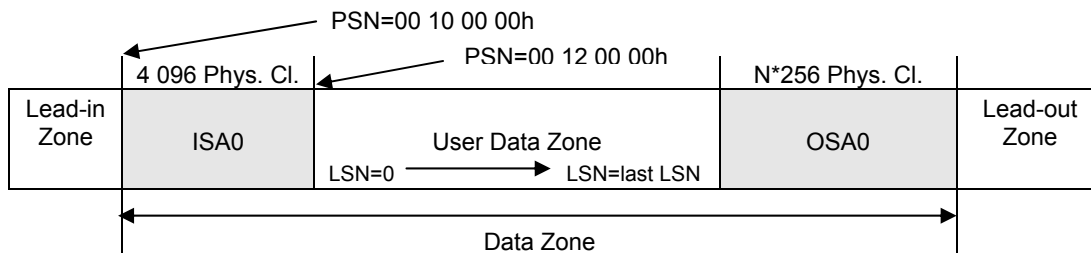


Figure 6 — Layout of Single Layer BD-RE Disc

The layer 0 information zone of a dual layer BD-RE disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone 0, and the Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: the Outer Zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zones, creating three areas within each data zone: Inner Spare Areas (ISA0 and ISA1), User Data Zone, and Outer Spare Areas (OSA0 and OSA1).

If ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 Clusters. OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 8 192 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. OSA0 size in Clusters = $N \times 256$ Clusters, where $0 \leq N \leq 32$. OSA1 has the same size as OSA0. ISA1 has a variable size from 0 to 16 384 Clusters, in increments of 256 Clusters. Consequently, ISA1 size in Clusters = $L \times 256$ Clusters, where $0 \leq L \leq 64$. See Figure 7.

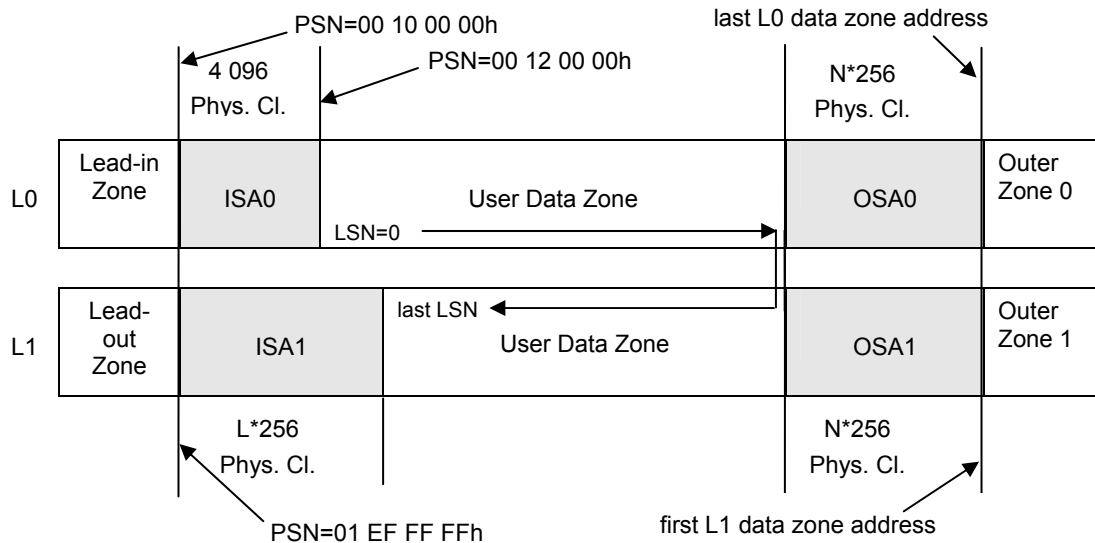


Figure 7 — Layout of Dual Layer BD-RE Disc

4.3.4 Sectors and Clusters

The logical block size of BD is 2 048 bytes collected into recordable units called Clusters. A Cluster contains 32 logical sectors.

- The user data within a BD sector is protected by the error correction coding in the Cluster that contains the sector.
- BD discs may be recorded over one or two layers. In the case of two layers, the user area of each media appears to the Host as a single continuous address space. The value of the layer 0 end Logical Block Address is returned by the GET PERFORMANCE command. Refer to 6.6.2.3 Unusable Area Data (Type=01h).

The access model for BD is based upon the random access device model:

- The user data space is organized in fixed size blocks (2 048 bytes/block) and addressed as logical blocks. Blocks in this Logical Block Address space may be read using only the READ (10) and READ (12) commands.
- Sectors within the user data space may be written using the WRITE (10), WRITE (12), and WRITE AND VERIFY (10) commands. The Drive may be required to perform read-modify-write sequences.
- Logical Block Addresses are numbered from 0 through CAPACITY-1. The value of CAPACITY-1 is the Logical Block Address returned by the READ CAPACITY command.
- The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is implemented to assure compatibility with existing applications. Only formats 0 and 1 are implemented. Some structures may be fabricated.
- Structures unique to BD may be read using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command.

4.3.5 Not Ready Conditions on BD-RE disc

If the TEST UNIT READY command responds with GOOD status, then the Drive is ready to accept some media accessing command. The readiness of the Drive is command dependent. Table 3 lists some conditions under which the Drive responds with GOOD status to the TEST UNIT READY command, but may not respond with GOOD status to a media access command (e.g., READ (10), WRITE (10) command).

Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions

| Situation | Response from Drive |
|---|---|
| BD-RE media is present and ready. Disc has never been formatted | Response to all media access commands except FORMAT UNIT command is: NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, NOT READY/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED, or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED |
| Unknown PAC is discovered | TEST UNIT READY responds with GOOD status, but specific disc access types are disallowed according to Unknown PAC rules. When the Unknown PAC rules disallow reading, response to a READ command is: CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED When the Unknown PAC rules disallow writing, response to a WRITE command is: CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED |
| Emergency Brake is active | TEST UNIT READY responds with CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to NOT READY/ INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED. All media accessing commands shall respond in the same way as TEST UNIT READY. |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

4.4 BD-R

4.4.1 Overview

BD-R is a write-once media with the general BD structure. The default format for BD-R implements the track/session model as typified by the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature.

In order to enable applications like mastering, it is also possible to format a BD-R disc without spare areas.

4.4.2 Information Area

Each layer of the BD-R Information Zone is divided into an embossed HFM area and a recordable area. The detailed spiral layout is shown in Figure 8.

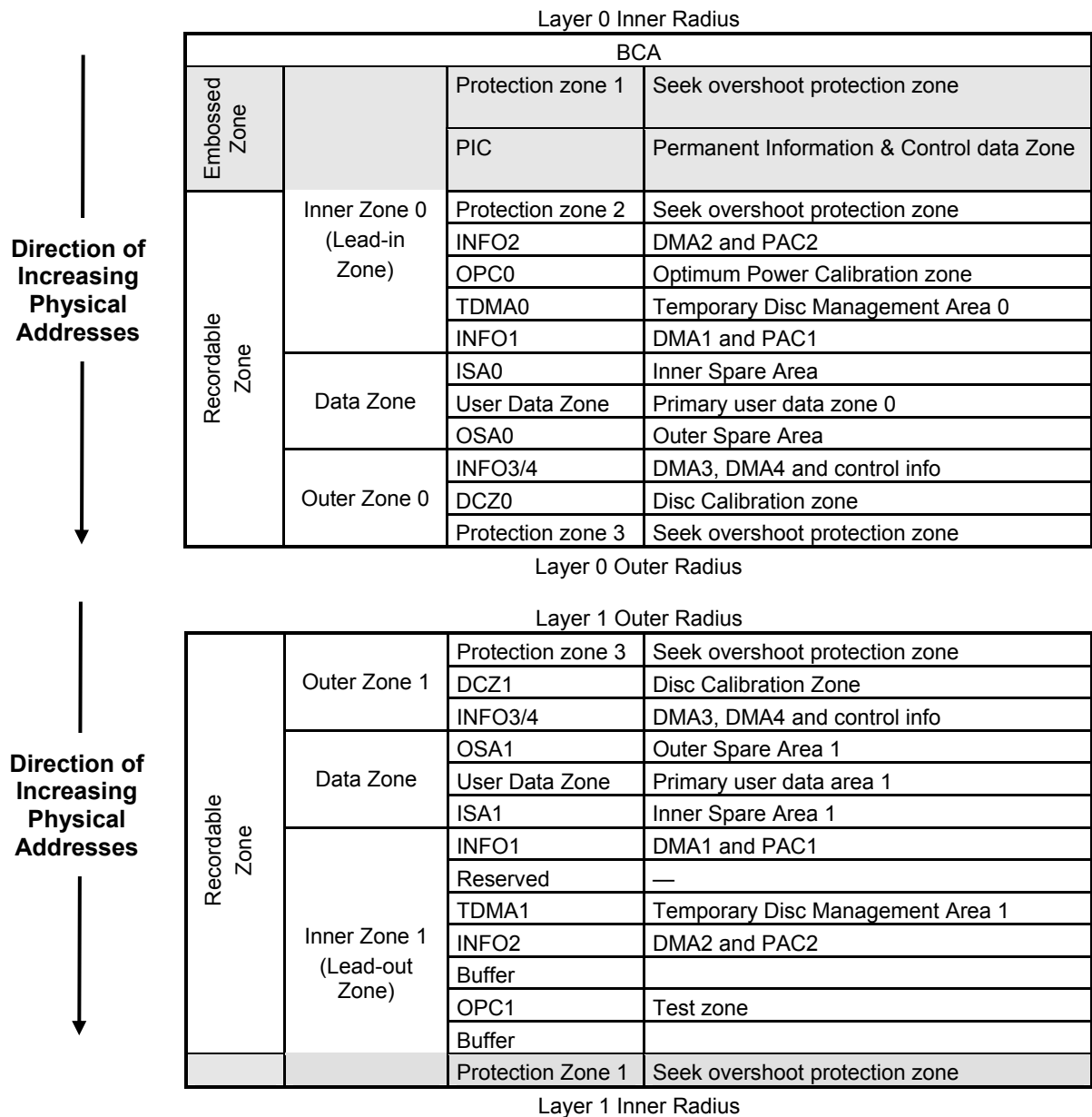


Figure 8 — BD-R Zones

The recordable area of each layer is divided into an Inner Zone, a Data Zone, and an Outer Zone. On a single layer disc the Inner Zone is used as a disc Lead-in and the Outer Zone is used as a Lead-out. On a dual layer disc, Inner Zone 0 is the disc Lead-in, Inner Zone 1 is the disc Lead-out, and the Outer Zones are layer transition areas.

For a detailed description of specific zones, consult *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications*.

4.4.2.1 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

Burst Cutting Area (BCA) The BCA is used to add information to the disc after completion of the manufacturing process. The BCA-code can be written by a high-power laser system in case of Recordable discs.

4.4.2.2 Embossed Zone

The Embossed zone consists of:

Protection Zone 1 Protection Zone 1, on each layer, is meant as a protection area against overwriting the PIC zone by the Burst Cutting Area (BCA) that precedes the normal recording spiral.

Permanent Information & Control data Zone (PIC) On layer zero, this Embossed area contains disc information that includes, but is not restricted to:

1. Physical media Class and Version
2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone
3. Physical address of the start of the Outer Zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out)
4. Number of layers
5. Recording Density
6. Write power information

The PIC zone on layer 1 is not required to be recorded.

4.4.2.3 Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in Zone)

An Inner Zone consists of:

Protection Zone 2 On both layers, this zone buffers the writable area from the embossed area.

INFO2 On both layers, INFO2 is reserved for DMA and PAC storage.

Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) Zone On both layers, the OPC Zone is reserved for testing and calibration.

TDMA0, 1 Temporary Disc Management Areas

INFO1 On both layers, this area is reserved for DMA and PAC storage.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

4.4.2.4 Data Zone

The Data Zone consists of:

| | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Inner Spare Areas (ISA0, ISA1) | If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then ISA0 contains 4 096 Clusters and ISA1 has a maximum size of 16 384 Clusters allocated in 256 Cluster increments. Any part of the data zone that is not allocated for the ISAs is part of the User Data Zone. A TDMA may be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters from any Spare area. This action reduces the size of the Spare Area by the amount allocated for the TDMA. |
| User Data Zone | The User Data Zone is the logically addressed area of the disc. |
| Outer Spare Areas (OSA0, OSA1) | If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then, OSA0 has a maximum size of 196 608 Clusters, allocated in 256 Cluster increments. On DL discs, OSA1 is the same size as OSA0. A TDMA may be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters from any Spare Area. This action reduces the size of the Spare Area by the amount allocated for the TDMA. |

4.4.2.5 Outer Zone 0 (Lead-out Zone on a SL disc)

On single layer media the Outer Zone has the function of the Lead-out Zone. On dual layer media, the Outer Zone 0 and Outer Zone 1 are layer transition zones between the two layers.

The Outer Zone consists of:

| | |
|-------------------|--|
| INFO3/INFO4 | On both layers, INFO3/INFO4 is reserved for defect management and control information. |
| DCZ | The Drive Calibration Zone is reserved for calibration purposes. |
| Protection Zone 3 | On both layers, this zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's outer radius. |

4.4.3 Logical Structure

4.4.3.1 Logical Structure of Single Layer BD-R

The single layer BD disc information zone is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone, and Lead-out Zone.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zone, creating three areas within the data zone: Inner Spare Area (ISA0), User Data Zone, and Outer Spare Area (OSA0).

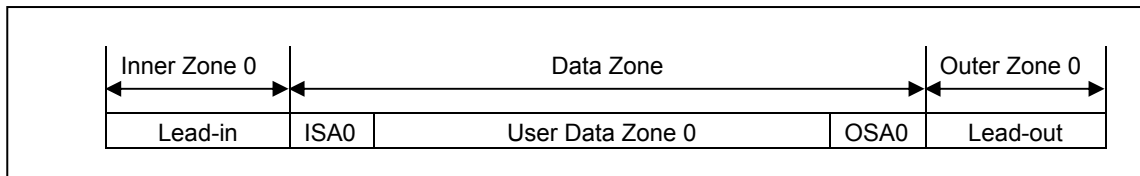


Figure 9 — SL BD-R Information Zone

Regardless of disc diameter, if ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 Clusters. On 120 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 196 608 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters. On 80 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 65 536 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters.

The defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose a special area is available in the Inner Zones called a Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA). Additional TDMA's can be defined to facilitate more space for more updates of the defect and recording management information. These areas can be useful in the case of many ejects after short recordings or when a more frequent update scheme is desired for more robustness against for example power failures.

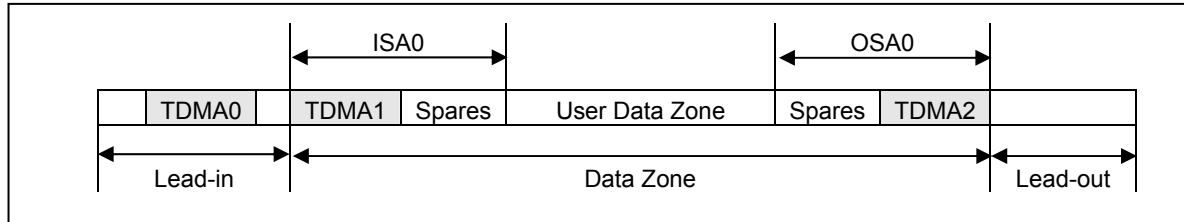


Figure 10 — TDMA Allocation on SL BD-R

TDMA0 is allocated from the Lead-in with 2 048 Clusters.

If necessary, TDMA1 may be allocated from ISA0. The size of TDMA1 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA1 to 15/16 of ISA0.

If necessary, TDMA2 may be allocated from OSA0. The size of TDMA2 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA2 to 15/16 of OSA0.

4.4.3.2 Logical Structure of Dual Layer BD-R

The layer 0 information zone of a dual layer BD disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone 0, and the Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: the Outer Zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone. Defect Management areas are intermingled with these zones.

The value of the layer 0 end Logical Block Address is returned by the GET PERFORMANCE command. Refer to 6.6.2.3 Unusable Area Data (Type=01h).

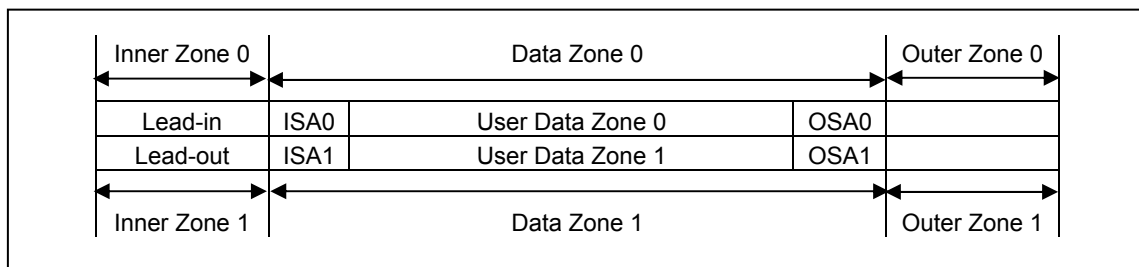


Figure 11 — DL BD-R Zones

Regardless of disc diameter, if ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 Clusters, and ISA1 has a variable size from 0 to 16 384 Clusters, in increments of 256 Clusters.

On 120 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 196 608 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. On 80 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 65 536 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. Regardless of disc diameter, OSA1 has the same size as OSA0.

The defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose a special area is available in the Inner Zones called a Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA). Additional TDMA's can be defined to facilitate more space for more

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

updates of the defect and recording management information. These areas can be useful in the case of many ejects after short recordings or when a more frequent update scheme is desired for more robustness against for example power failures.

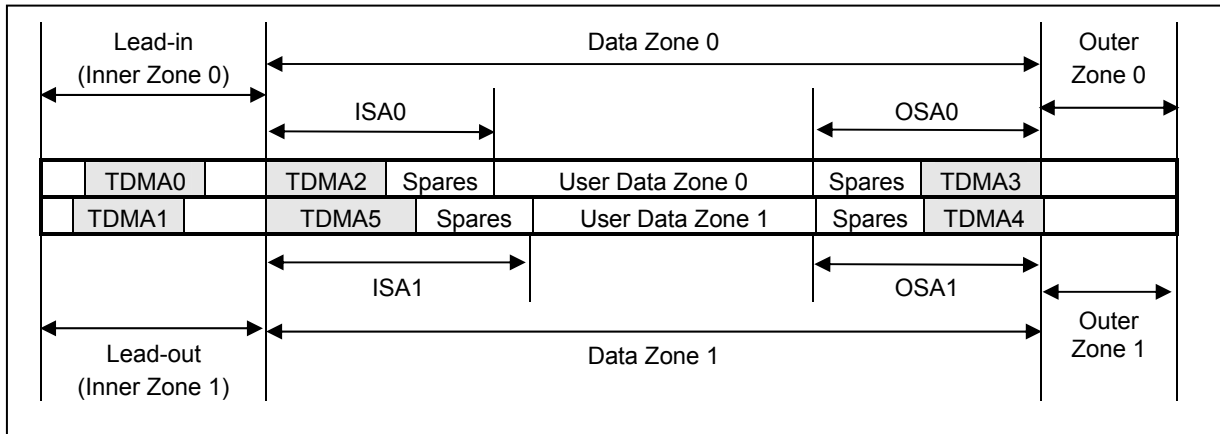


Figure 12 — TDMA Allocation on DL BD-R

TDMA0 is allocated in Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in) and is 2 048 Clusters in size.

TDMA1 is allocated in Inner Zone 1 (Lead-out) and is 2 048 Clusters in size.

TDMA2 may be allocated from ISA0. The size of TDMA2 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA2 to 15/16 of ISA0.

TDMA3 may be allocated from OSA0. The size of TDMA3 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA3 to 15/16 of OSA0.

TDMA4 may be allocated from OSA1. The size of TDMA4 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA4 to 15/16 of OSA1.

TDMA5 may be allocated from ISA1. The size of TDMA5 is an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA5 to 15/16 of ISA1.

4.4.3.3 TDMA and DMA Usage

The TDMA is allocated when the disc is initialized (typically by the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command). Each TDMA is filled up contiguously and in the direction of ascending PSNs.

For single layer discs, the minimal TDMA allocation is TDMA0. The TDMA is used sequentially: TDMA0 first, TDMA1 (if it exists) second and TDMA2 (if it exists) last.

For dual layer discs, the minimal TDMA allocation is TDMA0 and TDMA1. The TDMA is used sequentially: TDMA0 first, TDMA1 second, TDMA2 (if it exists) third, TDMA3 (if it exists) fourth, TDMA4 (if it exists) fifth and TDMA5 (if it exists) sixth.

To quickly discover the TDMA currently in use, the first few Clusters of TDMA0 are used as indicators. On a SL disc the first 3 Clusters of TDMA0 are reserved as "current TDMA access indicators". On a DL disc the first 6 Clusters of TDMA0 are reserved as "current TDMA access indicators". These TDMA access indicators are used in the direction of descending PSNs.

The first Cluster of TDMA0 is reserved as an indicator that all DMA zones are written. Thus, if the DMA indicator has been written, the disc is closed (finalized).

The SL TDMA access indicators are shown in Figure 13.

The DL TDMA access indicators are shown in Figure 14.

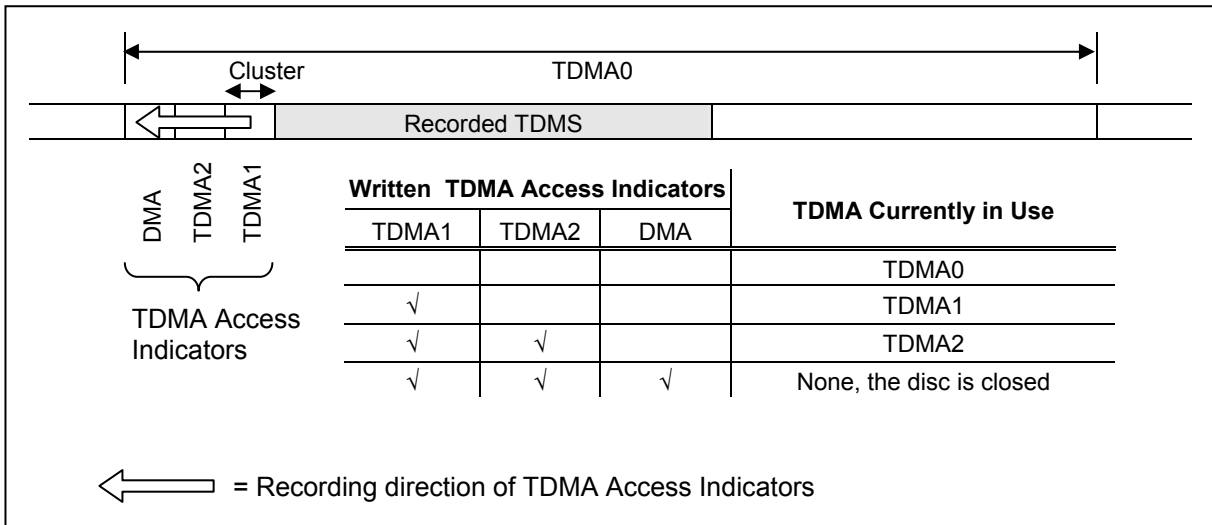


Figure 13 — TDMA Access Indicators on Single Layer Disc

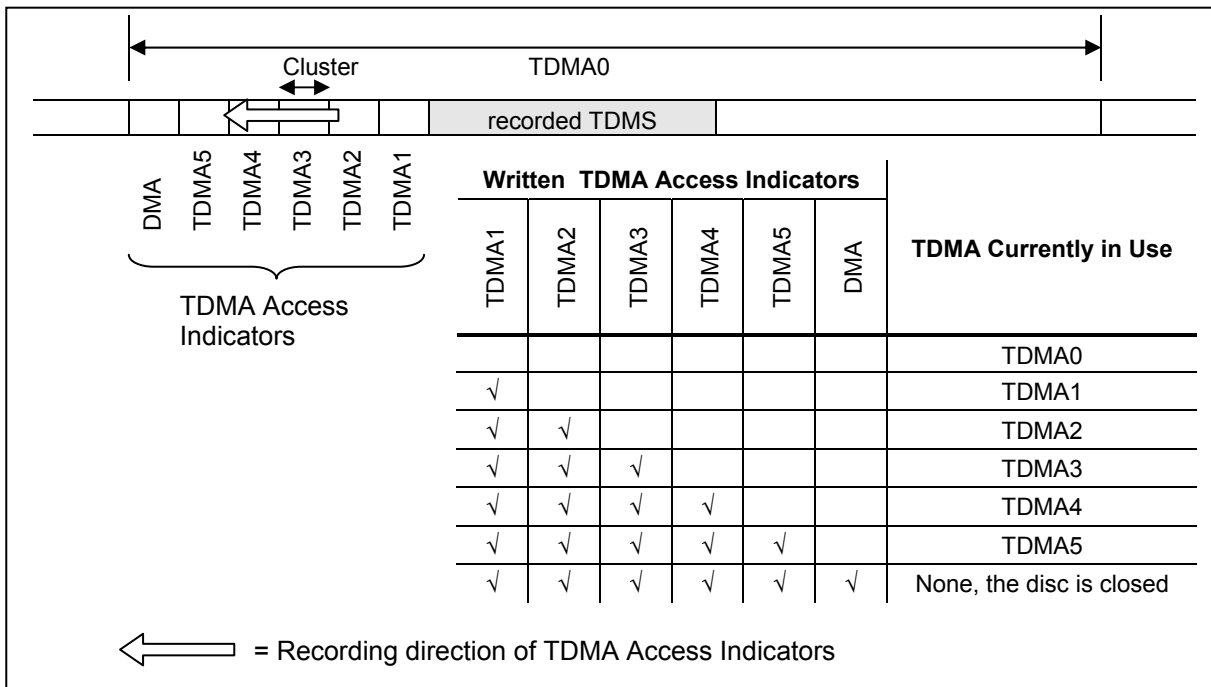


Figure 14 — TDMA Access Indicators on Dual Layer Disc

4.4.4 BD-R Recording Models

BD-R has two basic recording modes: SRM (Sequential Recording Mode) and RRM (Random Recording Mode). Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) is defined as an additional capability for SRM.

The default mode for a blank BD-R disc is SRM with no spares allocated. Default mode is established if a blank BD-R is mounted and ready, and the Drive accepts and processes a RESERVE TRACK command, a WRITE (10) command or a WRITE (12) command.

Otherwise, specific recording mode is selected by use of the FORMAT UNIT command. If spares are to be allocated, the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select either default size or actual size of spare area.

Once the recording mode has been established, it is not changeable.

4.4.4.1 Random Recording Mode (RRM)

The Random Recording Mode (RRM) is an application of a Random Recording model that is similar to the Write-Once device model. An RRM formatted disc may be randomly recorded in Clusters.

The written status of user data area Clusters is maintained in a structure called the Space Bitmap. The Space Bitmap contains one bit per Cluster in Logical Address order. If a bit is set to zero, the associated Cluster has never been requested to be written. If the bit is set to one, the associated Cluster has been requested to be recorded.

The ability to format and/or record user data in RRM formatted disc is optional for BD-R Drives.

4.4.4.2 Sequential Recording Mode (SRM)

4.4.4.2.1 General

The Sequential Recording Mode (SRM) is an application of the Track/Session model that has been previously defined for CD and DVD. In order to maintain a structure that is consistent with the historical models, all definitions are made with respect to logical addressing.

During the time that the Track/Session status of the disc is dynamic (i.e. when the disc is not finalized), status and boundary information about Tracks/Sessions are stored in a TDMS (Temporary Disc Management Structure). TDMS updates are made serially in areas called Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMAs). When the disc is finalized (i.e. no further changes are permitted), all pending TDMS updates shall be written, and the most recent copy of the TDMS is copied into each of the DMAs (4 on SL and 8 on DL) on the disc.

4.4.4.2.2 Definitions

4.4.4.2.2.1 Logical Blocks

A Logical Block is the smallest logically addressable unit of data that is readable by the Host. For BD-R, the Logical Block size is 2048 bytes. This value is specified in the Logical Block Size field in the Random Readable Feature Descriptor.

4.4.4.2.2.2 Recordable Units

For BD-R the recordable unit size is 32 Logical Blocks, one Cluster. This value is specified in the Blocking field of the Random Readable Feature Descriptor.

4.4.4.2.2.3 Logical Track: Sequential Recording Range (SRR)

A Logical Track is a set of sequential recordable units. Logical Tracks are numbered consecutively, starting with number one. On BD-R, the Logical Track is defined as a Sequential Recording Range (SRR). The physical extents of each SRR and the status of each SRR is defined in the SRR Information (SRRI) structure. The SRRI is a structure in the TDMS that is maintained in the Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMA).

BD-R Logical Tracks bounds are defined only in the SRRI. No overhead blocks are used in the definition of a Logical Track on BD-R.

4.4.4.2.2.3.1 Logical Track Starting Address

The LBA of the first Logical Block of the Logical Track is the starting address of the Logical Track.

4.4.4.2.2.3.2 Logical Track Length

The number of Logical Blocks in the Logical Track is the Logical Track length. Since a BD-R Logical Track is a collection of Clusters, this value is an integral multiple of 32.

4.4.4.2.2.3.3 Next Writable Address (NWA)

The Host is only permitted to record a Logical Track sequentially, beginning with its starting address. To facilitate this, the Drive maintains a Next Writable Address (NWA) for each open Logical Track. There is at most one NWA in a Logical Track.

If the Logical Track is blank, then the NWA is initialized to the starting address of the Logical Track. The NWA is advanced by the number of LBAs written in each write command after each write command has terminated.

Since writes may be buffered, the NWA may not always be at a Cluster boundary. If buffer synchronization is forced (e.g. SYNCHONIZE CACHE command), all buffered data is written to the disc. If the last buffered block is not sector 31 of a Cluster, then zero padding shall be added to the end of the Cluster prior to writing.

4.4.4.2.2.3.4 Last Recorded Address (LRA)

The last Cluster addressed by a WRITE command may be written with 1 to 32 Logical Blocks contain Host supplied data. The Last Recorded Address (LRA) is the LBA of the last Logical Block of the Cluster that contains Host supplied data. LRA is not valid when POW is enabled.

4.4.4.2.2.3.5 Blank Logical Track

If every Logical Block in a Logical Track is blank, the Logical Track is blank. The NWA of a blank Logical Track is the Logical Track starting address.

4.4.4.2.2.4 Open Logical Track

The SRRI contains a list of open SRRs. A Logical Track is open if it is in the list. In order to be in the list of open Logical Tracks: $\text{Start Address} + \text{Track Length} - 1 > \text{NWA}$. The SRRI open SRR list is limited to 16 open SRRs.

4.4.4.2.2.5 Closed Logical Track

A Logical Track is closed when the Logical Track is defined, but not in the SRRI list of open Logical Tracks. The Host may request that a Logical Track be closed by sending the CLOSE TRACK/SESSION command. A Logical Track becomes closed when:

1. All of its Logical Blocks have been written, or
2. When the Host has requested that the Logical Track be closed.

When a Logical Track is closed, the NWA is no longer valid for appending new data.

If the invisible Logical Track, numbered N, is partially recorded and a close is requested by the Host, the Logical Track bounds are specified to include only the recorded Logical Blocks and a new, blank invisible Logical Track is created with Logical Track number N+1.

4.4.4.2.2.6 Session

A session is a collection of contiguous Logical Tracks. The bounds of a session are defined in the SRRI. Unlike CD and DVD sessions, the BD-R SRM session is defined only by the SRRI. Consequently, there is neither a session Lead-in nor a session Lead-out. Sessions are numbered consecutively, starting with session one.

4.4.4.2.2.6.1 Open Session

A session is open if any of the Logical Tracks within the session are open.

4.4.4.2.2.6.2 Closed Session

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

A session is closed if all of the Logical Tracks within the session are closed. Once a session is closed, it is not permitted to add new Logical Tracks.

4.4.4.2.2.6.3 Finalized (Closed) Disc

A disc is finalized when all sessions are closed and each final DMS is recorded in the appropriate DMA. Once each DMS has been recorded, it is not necessary to record any other part of the Inner or Outer Zones.

4.4.4.2.3 Logical to Physical Addressing

The logical to physical address mapping operates differently on layer 0 and layer 1.

On layer 0, the user data area begins at some physical address, K, where K is the PSN of the first block of the first Cluster after ISA0. $K+J_0$ is the PSN of the first block of the first Cluster of OSA0.

The primary Logical to physical mapping (LtoP) is defined as: For $0 \leq N \leq J_0-1$, $LtoP(N) = N+K$. Otherwise, N is not in the range of the mapping. See Figure 15.

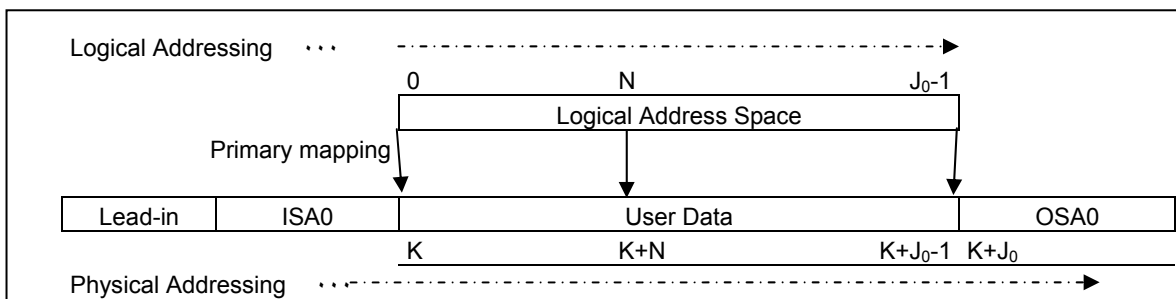


Figure 15 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 0

If layer 1 is present, the disc's user data zone continues on layer 1 with the first block of the first Cluster after OSA1, J_1 . The user data zone continues until the first block of the first Cluster of ISA1, at C. The primary Logical to physical mapping (LtoP) is extended to include layer 1:

$$LtoP(N) = \begin{cases} N+K & \text{when } 0 \leq N \leq J_0-1. \\ (N-J_0)+J_1 & \text{when } J_0 \leq N \leq C-1. \end{cases}$$

See Figure 16.

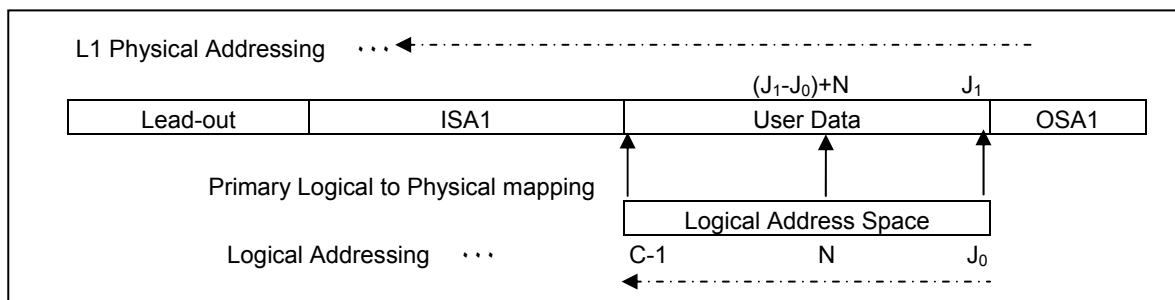


Figure 16 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 1

If the disc is formatted with defect management, and if upon recording, $LtoP(N)$ is found to be defective, the defect replacement mapping is applied to map $LtoP(N)$ to a Cluster in a spare area.

4.4.4.2.4 Status after Formatting a Blank BD-R

If a blank BD-R disc is formatted in SRM, the User Data Zone consists of one open session with one open Logical Track (SRR). This Logical Track is the invisible Logical Track. As shown in Figure 17, the number of the Logical Track is 1, its start address is $LBA = 0$, and its length is the size of the User Data Zone (CAP). The Next Writable Address (NWA) for Logical Track 1 is $LBA = 0$.

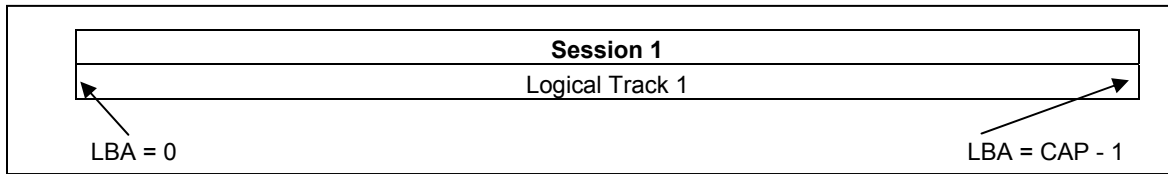


Figure 17 — Status of a BD-R Disc After Formatting in SRM

If a WRITE command is issued to the Drive, the Start LBA must be equal to the NWA. If the Start LBA of a WRITE command is not the NWA of some Logical Track, then the WRITE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status, and the sense shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

4.4.4.2.5 Creating Additional Logical Tracks

The RESERVE TRACK command may be used to define a fixed length Logical Track from the invisible track. The length of the new track, N2, is defined by the execution of the RESERVE TRACK command using parameters from the CDB. The length is specified as a number of Logical Blocks, but the RESERVE TRACK command performs the creation of the new Logical Track as an integral number of Clusters. Figure 18 shows the newly defined Logical Track is Logical Track 1, its start address is LBA = 0, its length is N2, and its NWA is 0. The invisible Logical Track is Logical Track 2, its start address is N2, its length is the remaining size of the User Data Zone, and its NWA = N2.

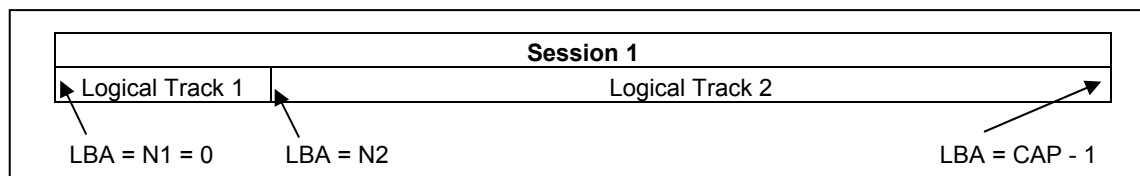


Figure 18 — Status of BD-R Disc after first RESERVE TRACK command

The RESERVE TRACK command may be used iteratively to define additional Logical Tracks from the invisible Logical Track as shown in Figure 19.

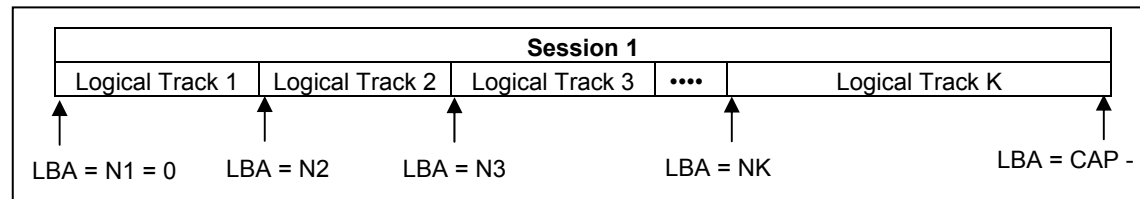


Figure 19 — Status of BD-R Disc after multiple RESERVE TRACK commands

It is also possible to split an open Logical Track into two Logical Tracks. The split shall occur at the start of a Cluster within the Logical Track that is at or after the NWA. If the split occurs at the NWA, then the first of the two new tracks is created with closed status and the second Logical Track is blank.

4.4.4.2.6 Creating New Sessions

When a session is closed and the disc is not finalized, a new session is created that contains only the invisible Logical Track. See Figure 20.

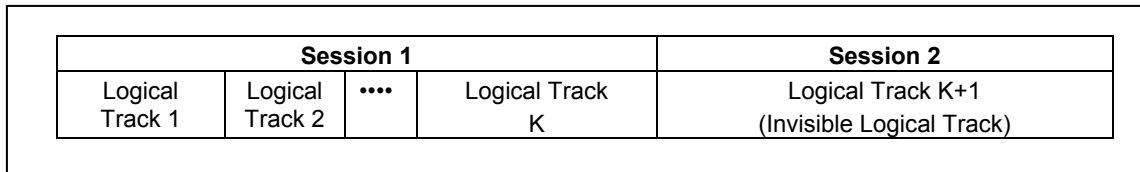


Figure 20 — Status of BD-R Disc after Closing Session 1

The process of creating session 2 can be iterated as with session 1 until the disc is finalized.

4.4.4.3 Defect Management

Defect management is used to solve problems related to areas on the disc that may become defective or unreliable due to damage or contamination. The Drive redirects the recording of the involved user data to another location, called spare areas. Information about these redirections is stored in the Defect List.

In order to ensure data integrity, it is recommended that WRITE (10) data be verified during the write process when the Defect Management Feature is current. This is also recommended that WRITE (12) data be verified except when either VNR is set to one or Streaming is set to one.

4.4.4.4 Pseudo-OverWrite (POW)

Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) is used to make Write-Once media behave like Rewritable media. When the Host requests recording of user data on an already recorded area, then the Drive redirects the recording of the involved user data to an alternative location. Such Logical Overwrites (writing to the same LBA, but actually recording at a reassigned PSN) are treated in the same way as defects, i.e. information about the redirections is stored in the Defect List.

4.4.4.4.1 SRM+POW

When a SRM disc has the POW capability, the Logical Overwrite of a Cluster is redirected to the NWA of some open Logical Track. POW recording is permitted on the SRM logical structure:

- a. A SRM disc with POW shall be initialized by the formatting process as a single session disc with a single Logical Track.
- b. POW is not permitted on a finalized disc, because no NWA is valid.
- c. If the disc is not finalized, POW is permitted in both open and closed Logical Tracks.
- d. On SRM, each WRITE command shall start and end within the same Logical Track. This restriction does not apply to SRM+POW.

When POW is performed, it is recommended that the redirection be to a Cluster with NWA that is near the addressed Cluster. The actual algorithm for selecting the physical Cluster for the redirection is vendor specific.

4.4.4.4.2 Orphans

There is exactly one NWA for each Logical Track. The NWA is a LBA that follows the physical usage of the Logical Track rather than the Logical usage.

When a POW is applied to a Logical Block, the relocation occurs at the NWA of some open Logical Track. An entire Cluster must be used in the relocation, so the NWA is advanced by 32. Prior to the POW, 32 LBAs were associated with the Cluster beginning at the NWA. After the POW operation, those 32 LBAs are no longer available for append. The LBAs have not been lost, but they may be written only via another POW. Until written, these LBAs are called Orphans.

An orphan LBA has no associated logical content and consequently represents a blank sector. If a READ command is issued to an orphan LBA, the Drive returns the data that has been relocated to the physical location that was originally associated with the orphan LBAs.

4.4.4.4.3 Closed Logical Tracks with Blank Clusters

Although a closed Logical Track has no valid NWA, it may contain blank Clusters. A POW to a Logical Block in a closed Logical Track may require a read-modify-write operation. Consequently, determination of blankness is necessary. If a POW of a blank Cluster is indicated, then any unsent Logical Blocks shall be zero padded prior to writing. Due to the inefficiency, it is recommended to avoid POWing blank Clusters in closed tracks.

4.4.4.5 SRM+POW Examples

For simplicity, the examples are described for single layer media.

4.4.4.5.1 Initialize the Disc as SRM+POW

A blank BD-R disc is formatted as SRM+POW. The PSN of the first block of the first Cluster after ISA0 is K. The PSN of the first block of the first Cluster of OSA0 is K+C, where C is the number of blocks in the User Data Zone.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = C.

The READ CAPACITY command returns C-1 as the last addressable logical block on the media.

See Figure 21.

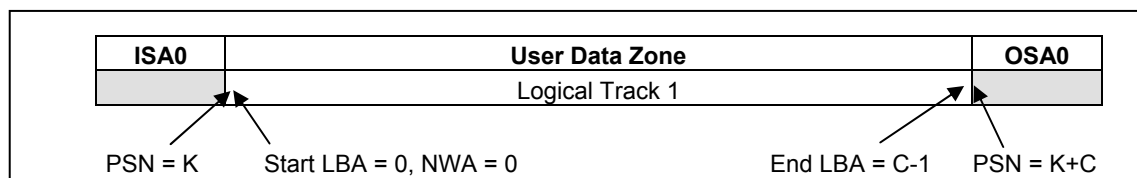


Figure 21 — Status after Formatting SRM+POW

4.4.4.5.2 Create a Small Outer Logical Track, Write it, and Close it

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split the single, invisible Logical Track at LBA = C-256. This creates one large track, C-256 blocks in length, and one small track, 256 blocks in length.

The READ DISC INFORMATION command (requesting standard disc information) shall show one Logical Track prior to the RESERVE TRACK command and two tracks afterward.

A WRITE (10) command sends 128 blocks of data starting at the NWA (C-256) of Logical Track 2.

A WRITE (10) command sends 128 blocks of data starting at the NWA (C-128) of Logical Track 2.

Logical Track 2 is closed because the entire Logical Track has been completely written.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = C-256.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = C-256, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0.

See Figure 22.

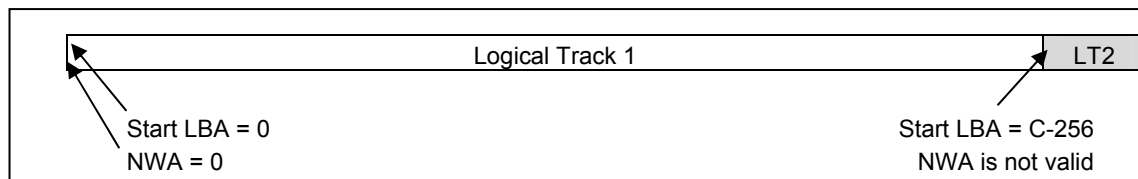


Figure 22 — Create, Write, and Close Small Outer Logical Track

4.4.4.5.3 Split Logical Track 1

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split Logical Track 2 from Logical Track 1.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 320 and free blocks = C-576.

See Figure 23.

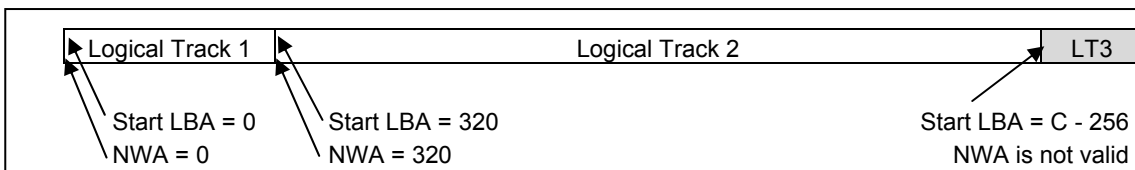


Figure 23 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 1

4.4.4.5.4 Split Logical Track 2

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split Logical Track 3 from Logical Track 2.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 320 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 640 and free blocks = C-896.

See Figure 24.

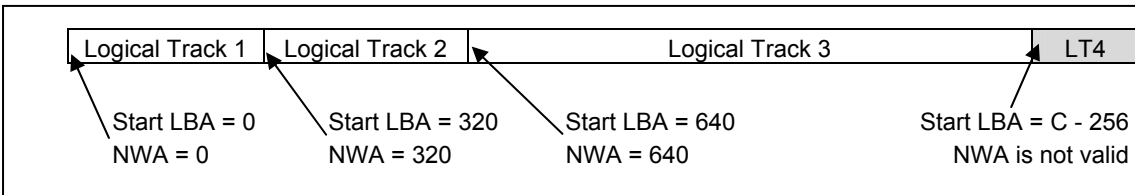


Figure 24 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 2

4.4.4.5.5 Write to Each Logical Track

A WRITE (10) command sends 160 blocks of data starting at the NWA (0) of Logical Track 1.
 A WRITE (10) command sends 160 blocks of data starting at the NWA (320) of Logical Track 2.
 A WRITE (10) command sends 32 blocks of data starting at the NWA (640) of Logical Track 3.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 160 and free blocks = 160.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 480 and free blocks = 160.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928.

See Figure 25. Note that All 3 Logical Tracks are open.

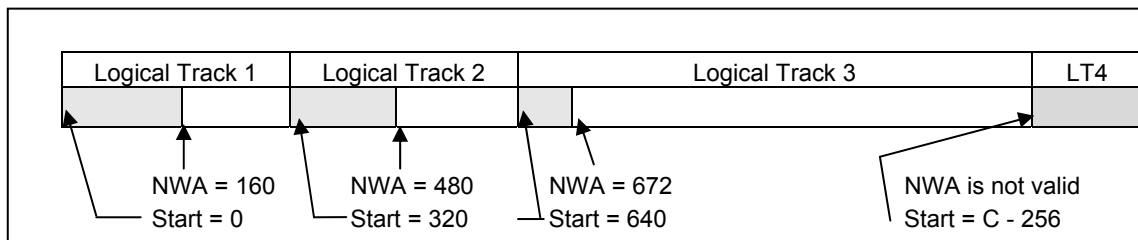


Figure 25 — Status after Writing to each Logical Track

4.4.4.5.6 POW a Logical Block in Logical Track 1

A WRITE (10) command writes one block of user data at LBA = 128.

This Logically OverWrites sector 128. The Cluster beginning at LBA 128 is read internally, the new data replaces the data for sector 128, and the Cluster is rewritten at the Logical Track 1 NWA (160). The NWA is now 192.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 192 and free blocks = 128.

In Figure 26, note that LBAs 160,..., 191 are now Orphans.

The logical length of Logical Track 1 is 320, however, the number of written LBAs in Logical Track 1 (160) plus the free blocks of Logical Track 1 (128) can be at most 288.

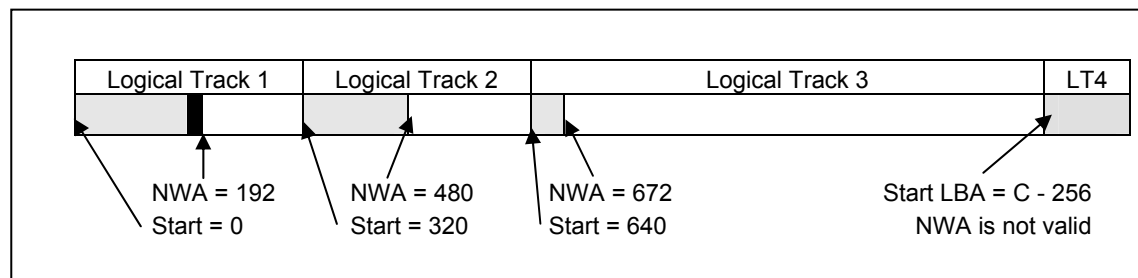


Figure 26 — Status after POW to LBA 128

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

4.4.4.5.7 Complete Writing Logical Track 1, POW LBA = 128 a Second Time

A WRITE (10) command sends 128 blocks of data starting at the NWA (192) of Logical Track 1.

A WRITE (10) command writes one block of user data at LBA = 128.

This Logically OverWrites sector 128. The Cluster beginning at LBA 160 is read internally, the new data replaces the data for sector 128, and the Cluster is rewritten at the Logical Track 2 NWA (480). The NWA is now 512. It is also permitted to POW to the NWA of another track.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start Address = 0, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0. Logical Track 1 is closed.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 512 and free blocks = 128.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928.

See Figure 27.

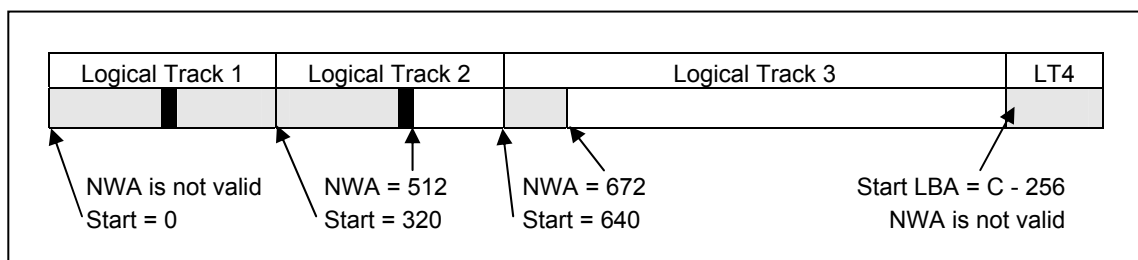


Figure 27 — Status after writing to Logical Track 1

4.4.4.5.8 Using Orphaned LBAs via POW

A WRITE (10) command writes 32 blocks of user data at LBA = 160.

This uses the LBAs that were orphaned by a previous POW. Using orphaned LBAs requires a new POW. The new data from the Host is written at the Logical Track 2 NWA (512). The NWA is now 544.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start Address = 0, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0. Logical Track 1 is closed.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 544 and free blocks = 96.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928.

See Figure 28.

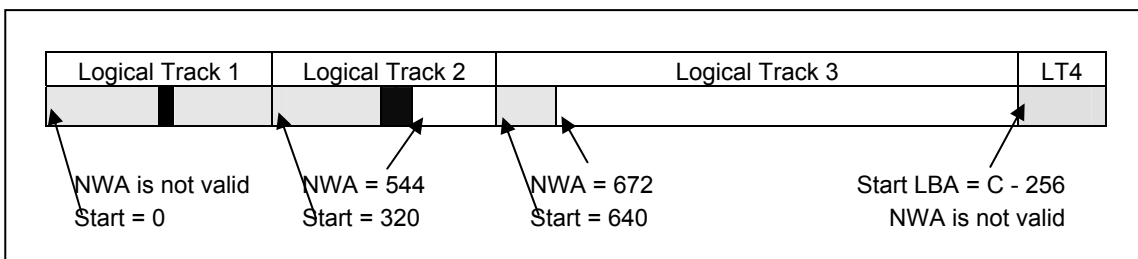


Figure 28 — Status after POW of LBA 160

Note that LBAs 512,..., 543 are now orphaned.

4.4.4.5.9 The Expanding Orphanage

Each time a POW is performed, 32 orphaned LBAs are created. Orphan LBAs can be used, but since it is only possible to do so with a POW, new orphan LBAs are created in the process.

Consequently, the number of Orphan LBAs is a monotonically increasing function. In 4.4.4.5.6, Orphan LBAs 160 through 191 were created by the POW of LBA 128.

In 4.4.4.5.7, Orphan LBAs 480 through 511 were created by the POW of LBA 128.

In 4.4.4.5.8, Orphan LBAs 512 through 543 were created when Orphan LBAs 160 through 191 were used.

In order to provide a complete LBA space, recording at any unused LBA is permitted. However, using orphaned LBAs requires additional defect list entries and causes additional seeking during sequential LBA accesses.

Due to the inefficiency of media use and degradation of performance, it is preferred that the Host allocation algorithms avoid using orphan LBAs. This can be done by only permitting writes to start at some Logical Track's NWA.

4.4.4.6 Considerations for the Host When Writing on SRM+POW Discs

4.4.4.6.1 POW of Less than a Cluster

A WRITE command may request POW of less than one Cluster. The WRITE range is represented in Figure 29 by part E. Size of Part D + Size of Part E + Size of Part F = 32. It is possible that either part D or part F has zero length. In the most general case, it is assumed that both parts D and F have non-zero length.

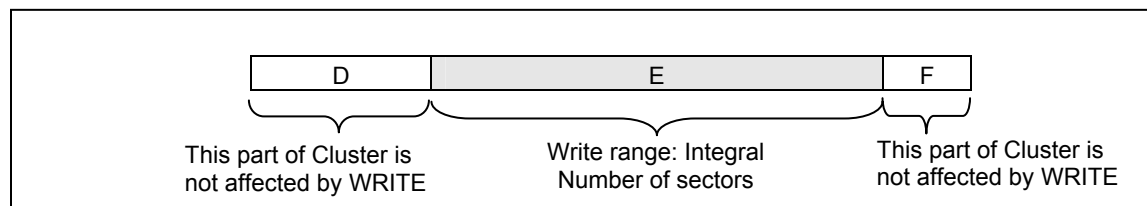


Figure 29 — Parts of a POWed Cluster

Parts D and F must be written using a read-modify-write operation through the buffer. If any padding is required, it shall be performed by the Drive.

The sectors of Part E may be written directly with no modification.

4.4.4.6.2 POW and Append in the Same Range

A WRITE command is permitted to start at a previously written LBA and end at never before written LBAs. See Figure 30.

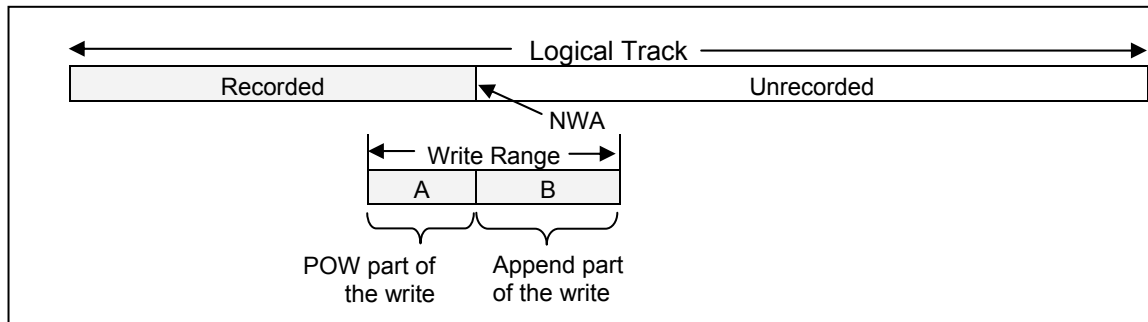


Figure 30 — POW and Append Parts of WRITE

WRITE range begins prior to the Logical Track NWA and ends after the Logical Track NWA. The Host may choose to control the writing. There are 2 possibilities:

1. In order to minimize the number of POWed Clusters, the Host should send two WRITE commands: the first WRITE command appends part B, and the second WRITE command performs the part A POW.
2. In order to maximize performance, the Host should send two WRITE commands: the first WRITE command performs the part A POW, and the second WRITE command performs the part B POW.

Some Host applications are constructed to be unaware of POWs. In this case, the Host is permitted to issue a single WRITE for all of the logical blocks. There are also two possibilities for the Drive:

1. In order to minimize the number of POWed Clusters, the Drive first appends part B. Next the Drive performs the part A POW. This has the same result as management by the Host in the case 1, above.
2. In order to maximize performance, the Drive performs POW of all the sectors in the range. This has the same result as management by the Host in the case 2, above.

The actual Drive behavior is vendor specific.

4.4.5 Using VNR with BD-R

If the Hardware Defect Management Feature is current, non-streamed writes should be verified by the Drive in an automatic verify-after-write process. Some applications may be designed to expect behavior associated with Drives and media that do not automatically perform verify-after-write (e.g. write-once media without spare areas). In order to make that behavior available to BD-R Drives, the VNR (Verify Not Required) bit has been defined within the WRITE (12) CDB.

4.5 Emergency Brake

As a protection measure for possible fatal Drive/media combinations, a data set is defined that can be used by specific Drive models to recognize discs that need special handling to prevent fatal functioning. This data is called Emergency Brake (EB) data.

The EB data is specified in the first PIC Cluster of each Info Fragment. It consists of an EB Header, EB data field(s) and an EB Footer. EB data fields shall only be included after mutual agreement between the disc manufacturer and the involved Drive manufacturer when specific models of the Drive manufacturer's products require special actions when handling such discs, e.g. to prevent damage to the disc or the Drive.

The Emergency Brake can be defined for BD-ROM, BD-RE, and BD-R.

If the Emergency Brake data from a BD disc indicates to the Drive that this disc should not be accessed by the Drive, then the TEST UNIT READY command and all media accessing commands shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT READY/UNIQUE DRIVE-MEDIA READ INCOMPATIBILITY (02/30/1B).

4.6 Physical Access Control (PAC)

4.6.1 Overview

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are disc structures that include additional information to provide interchange information. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area and backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area.

A PAC may be read by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command. If permitted, a PAC may be written by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command. On BD-R disc, when there is no remaining Cluster in PAC Area to update a PAC, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to PROGRAM MEMORY AREA/RMA IS FULL (03/73/05).

New PACs may be defined in the future for specific applications/functions. Drives designed before the introduction date of such new PACs shall treat such PACs as "Unknown PACs". The "Unknown PAC Rules" field (see 4.6.2.3), provides a method to avoid compatibility problems. There are no generalized physical access restrictions for a "Known PAC".

4.6.2 General PAC Format

The general PAC format is shown in Table 4.

Table 4 — General PAC Format

| | Byte Offset | Field Length in Bytes | Field Name |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| PAC Header | 0 | 3 | PAC ID |
| | 3 | 1 | PAC format number |
| | 4 | 4 | PAC Update Count |
| | 8 | 4 | Unknown PAC Rules |
| | 12 | 1 | Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags |
| | 13 | 2 | Reserved (set to zeros) |
| | 15 | 1 | Number of Segments |
| | 16 | 8 | Segment 0 |
| | 24 | 8 | Segment 1 |
| | ... | ... | ... |
| | 264 | 8 | Segment 31 |
| PAC Specific Data | 272 | 112 | Reserved (set to zeros) |
| | 384 | 1 | Known PAC Entire Disc Flags |
| | 385 | 3 | Reserved |
| | 388 | ... | PAC Specific Information |
| | ... | ... | |
| 63 487 | | | |
| | 63 488 ... 65 535 | 2 048 | Reserved |

4.6.2.1 PAC ID and Format

The PAC ID (3 bytes) identifies the specific PAC Cluster. PAC IDs 000000h and FFFFFFFh are reserved. The Format number of the PAC identifies the PAC format version.

4.6.2.2 PAC Update Count

The PAC Update Count specifies the total number of update operations of the current PAC. This field is set to 00000000h during the initial recording of the PAC, and is incremented by one each time the current PAC is re-written.

4.6.2.3 Unknown PAC Rules

The Unknown PAC Rules specifies the required actions when the PAC ID is not set to a known value. These bytes form a field consisting of 32 individual bits. If a Drive encounters multiple unknown PACs on one disc, it shall use the OR-function of the Unknown PAC Rules.

Each bit is either reserved, a write Control type, or a read Control type. Each Control type is associated with a specific disc area.

If a write Control type is set to zero, writing in the associated area is permitted. If a write Control type bit is set to one, writing in the associated area is prohibited.

If a read Control type is set to zero, reading in the associated area is permitted. If a read Control type bit is set to one, reading in the associated area is prohibited.

For BD-R, see *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for specific Control type bit assignments.

For BD-RE, see *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for specific Control type bit assignments.

If execution of some command would result in violating any Unknown PAC rule, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/DRIVE-MEDIA FORMAT INCOMPATIBILITY FORBIDS ACCESS (05/31/08).

4.6.2.4 Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags

The Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags byte specifies Unknown PAC Rules that cover the entire disc. Bits 1 through 7 are reserved. Bit 0 specifies re-initialization rules when the PAC is unknown. On BD-RE, if bit 0 is set to zero, re-initialization is permitted if it is not blocked by any other mechanism for the entire disc. On BD-RE, if bit 0 is set to one, re-initialization is prohibited. On BD-R, bit 0 is set to one.

4.6.2.5 Segments

A Segment field specifies the start and end address of a contiguous range of Clusters, called a Segment. Segments are defined starting from Segment 0 to Segment N-1, where N is specified in the Number of Segments field ($0 \leq N \leq 32$). Segments do not overlap and are sorted in ascending order according to their addresses. Segments only start and end at Cluster boundaries. All Segment i fields, where $i \geq N$, are set to zeros. The first four bytes of the Segment i field, if used, contains the first PSN of the first Cluster belonging to the Segment, and the last four bytes contains the last PSN of the last Cluster belonging to the Segment.

4.6.2.6 Known PAC Entire Disc Flags

The Known PAC Entire Disc Flags byte specifies rules for the entire disc in case the Drive is able to interpret the PAC.

4.6.2.7 PAC specific Information

The PAC specific information fields contain information that is specific to the current PAC.

4.6.3 Primary PAC

The Primary PAC (PAC ID = 50524Dh ("PRM"), PAC Format = 00h) is included on each BD-ROM and BD-RE. The Primary PAC is not defined for BD-R.

4.6.3.1 Primary PAC on BD-ROM

PACs shall be recorded in INFO1/PAC1 and INFO2/PAC2 on each layer. The BD-ROM Primary PAC provides the status of PAC recording in each of those zones.

See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Read-only Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-ROM.

4.6.3.2 Primary PAC on BD-RE

The Primary PAC Cluster is included on each BD-RE disc to provide information about the date when the disc was initially recorded and to identify each recorder that have recorded individual Clusters on the disc.

Up to 252 Drives can be identified in the Primary PAC. After 252 unique Drive IDs have been logged, recording may continue, but no more Drives may be logged.

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command is used to read the Primary PAC. This permits the examination of the identification of each Drive that has written the disc.

See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-RE.

4.6.4 Disc Write Protect PAC

4.6.4.1 General

The recording of the Disc Write Protect PAC (PAC ID = 445750h ("DWP"), PAC Format = 00h) is optional and can be used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. Although the write protection typically applies only to the recording of user data, any command that requests to change the structure of the media (e.g., SRR structure) is also restricted. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password can be included. If a valid DWP PAC Cluster exists on the disc, Drives that understand the PAC shall follow the rules indicated by the Write protect control bits.

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command is used to read the DWP PAC. This allows the Host to examine the following:

- a. Write protect status of the disc,
- b. If write protected, the type of write protect: virtual or physical,
- c. Status of an associated write protect password.

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command is used to write the DWP PAC. This allows the Host to perform the following functions:

- a. Write protect a write enabled disc.
- b. Write enable a write protected disc.
- c. Set, change, or remove the write protect password.

There are two fields specific to the DWP PAC: the Write Protect Control Byte and the Write Protect Password.

4.6.4.2 Write Protect Password

The Write protect password can consist of up to 32 characters according to ISO/IEC 646. Trailing bytes not used shall be set to 00h. The write protect password shall never be transferred outside the Drive.

If all bytes of the Write protect password field are set to 00h, then the Write protect password is inactive. If the Write protect password field is set to all FFh, then the disc is permanently write protected and further write action that is initiated by the Host shall not be allowed.

4.6.4.3 Write Protect Control Byte

The Write protect control byte (Table 5) specifies allowed and required actions. The Write protect control byte is at byte offset 388 in the DWP PAC.

Table 5 — Write Protect Control Byte

| 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------|---|---|---|---|-----|------|----|
| Reserved | | | | | PWD | PHYS | WP |

WP indicates the current status of write protection. If WP is set to 0, write protection is switched off and writing of user data is allowed without any restrictions. If WP is set to 1, write protection is switched on, and writing of user data or re-initializing the disc is restricted. On BD-RE, the WP bit is physically stored in the Write Protect Control Byte. On BD-R, the WP bit is physically stored in bit 0 of byte 1 025 of the Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS). In all cases, WP is presented to the Host as bit 0 of the Write Protect Control Byte.

The PHYS bit indicates the method of write protection. If PHYS is set to 0, virtual write protection is enabled (see 4.6.4.4). After Host confirmation (including optional password), writing of user data can be performed without changing the write protection settings on the disc. If PHYS is set to 1, physical write protection is switched on.

The PWD bit indicates if write protection includes a password. If PWD is set to 0, there is no defined password. If PWD is set to 1, a valid password has been defined.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

4.6.4.4 Virtual Write Enable (VWE)

The Virtual Write Enable is a bit in the header of the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command when Media Type =1 and format code = 30h. The Virtual Write Enable (VWE) bit enables or disables writing to a virtually write protected disc when PHYS = 0. Whenever PHYS = 1, the Drive ignores the setting of VWE.

When VWE is set to 1, it indicates that the Host is requesting the capability to write on a virtually write protected disc. This is a temporary write capability, a media change or Drive reset will cause the system to return to a write protected state. When VWE is set to 0, it indicates that the Host is rescinding any temporary write capability. Table 6 shows examples of Drive/Host actions based upon typical settings.

Table 6 — Examples of Drive/Host Interaction

| Initial PAC Write Protect Control Byte | Drive Behavior on Disc Mount | Host command Issued | Drive Behavior after Host command |
|--|--|---|---|
| No PWD/virtual/WP off 000b | No restrictions | No PWD/virtual/WP on 001b | Disc virtually write protected. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |
| No PWD/virtual/WP on 001b | No data writing or WP changes until Host confirmation | VWE = 1 | Data writing or WP changes temporarily allowed (no changes to PAC). Media change, Device reset, Host rescind (VWE=0 sent) returns disc to write protected state |
| No PWD/phys/WP off 010b | No restrictions | No PWD/phys/WP on 011b | Disc physically write protected. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |
| No PWD/phys/WP on 011b | No data writing until confirmation and WP changed to off. No WP changes until Host confirmation | No PWD/phys/WP off 010b | Data writing and WP changes allowed. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |
| PWD/virtual/WP off 100b | Data writing permitted. No WP changes until Host confirms password | No PWD/virtual/WP off 000b Matching password | No restrictions. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |
| | | Incorrect password | Error reported to Host, no change in Drive behavior or PAC. |
| PWD/virtual/WP on 101b | No data writing or WP changes until Host confirms password | VWE=1 Matching password | Data writing or WP changes temporarily allowed (no changes to PAC). Media change, Device reset, Host rescind (VWE=0 sent) returns disc to write protected state |
| PWD/phys/WP off 110b | No WP changes until Host confirms password | PWD/phys/WP on Matching password | Disc is physically write protected with an associated password. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |
| PWD/phys/WP on 111b | No data writing until confirmation and WP changed to off. No WP changes until Host confirms password | PWD/phys/WP off Matching password | Data writing and WP changes allowed. PAC updated with new write protect control byte. |

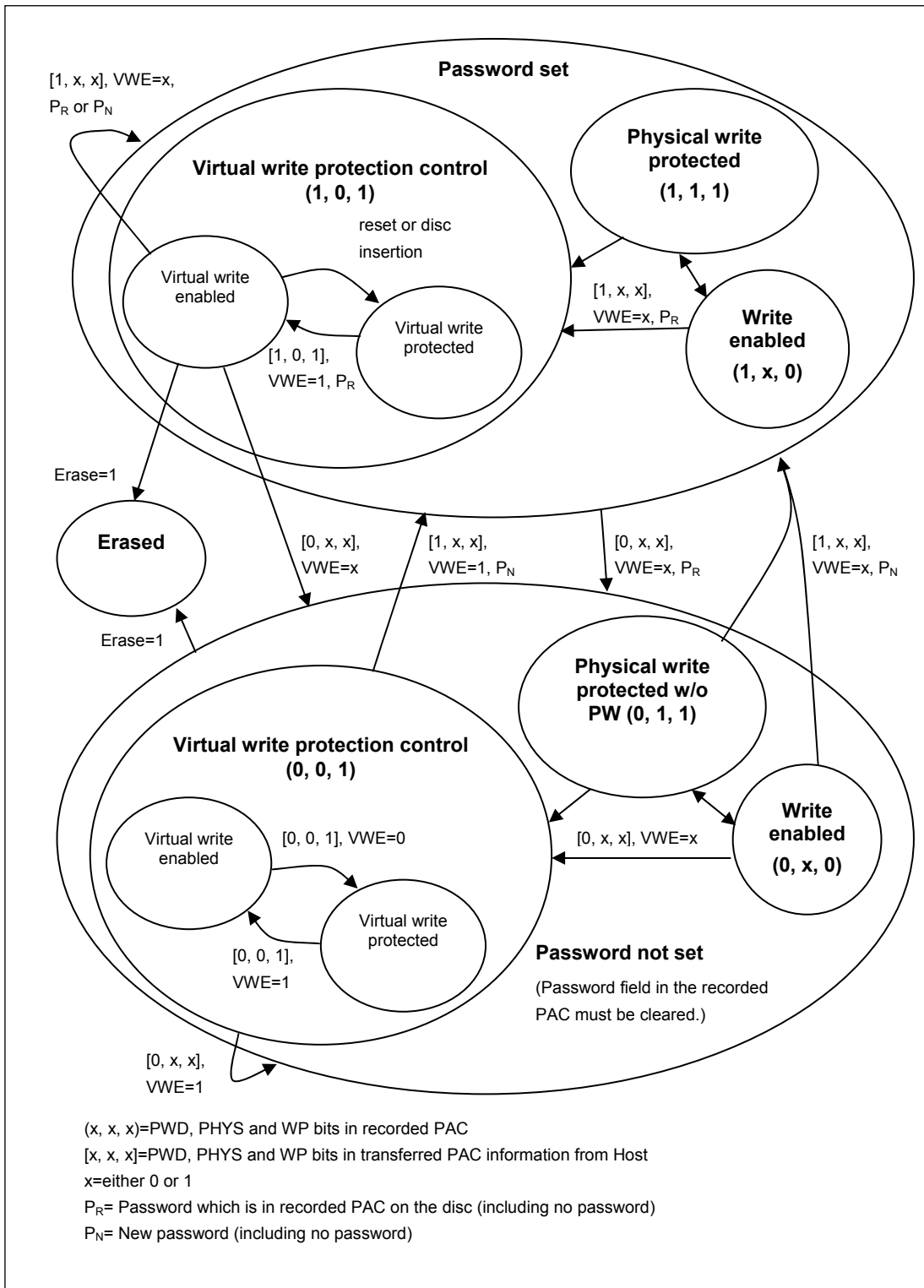


Figure 31 — Physical and Virtual Write Protect State Diagram

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

4.6.4.5 Changing the Write Protect Password

Changing the password in the PAC requires two separate steps from the Host. If the current write protection method includes a password, the Host must first send the matching password to the Drive, followed by a separate command with the new password.

Table 7 — Changing the Write Protect Password

| Current write protection status on the disc | Host actions required to change password |
|--|---|
| Virtual write protection with existing password | Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set, and VWE=1. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with new password, and same WP control byte settings (PWD=1, PHYS=0, WP=1). Drive records new password onto the disc. |
| Virtual write protection without password | Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with VWE=1. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password protection (PWD=1, PHYS=0, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc. |
| Physical write protection with existing password | Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set, and WP control byte settings to switch off physical write protection (PWD=0, PHYS=1, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password and write protection enabled (PWD=1, PHYS=1, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc. |
| Physical write protection without password | Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive to switch off physical write protection (PWD=0, PHYS=1, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password and physical write protection (PWD=1, PHYS=1, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc. |
| No write protection enabled, but password (PWD bit) is set. Note that this is not likely to be used by the Host. | Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set and WP control byte settings to switch off password protection (PWD=0, PHYS=same setting, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with new password and WP control byte settings set to indicate password protection (PWD=1, PHYS=same setting, WP=0). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc. |

4.7 Timely Safe Recording (TSR) method

4.7.1 General

In order to overcome the limitations of Host defect management and the limitations of Drive defect management, a new recording method, timely and safe, is proposed. The general idea of this method is to postpone the time consuming management of defects after an initial fast writing phase. The initial writing phase is fastened by reducing the amount of write-to-verify-to-write transitions. Defect management through reallocation is still performed by the Drive for non-streamed data. Defect management may be performed by the Host for streamed data (through reallocation).

This method is applicable to any media type offering Drive-based defect management and the resulting media is read-write backward compatible with legacy Host-Drive pairs.

The Drive reports support of this Feature through TSR Feature (Feature Code 0042h).

The Host and the Drive agree on an error reporting threshold through the error reporting threshold length field of the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page. The Drive signals necessity to read defect information through MEDIUM ERROR/WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07). The Host gathers this defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command.

For this method, the recording is organized in two phases.

4.7.2 Two phase recording

4.7.2.1 Phase one – fast recording and error detection

During this phase, the Host issues write commands (WRITE (10) and/or WRITE (12)) with TSR bit set to one. If BD-R Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) Feature is present and current, the Host shall during this phase write only to unrecorded LBA when TSR bit is set to one.

The Drive performs the writes with error detection but no automatically reallocation on error (regardless of AWRE bit in the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page 01h). The Drive reports error discovery using MEDIUM ERROR/WRITE ERROR RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07) within the agreed threshold (see 6.50.3 Command Execution). The Host reads the defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data), and resumes writing. The Host shall retain both the data and its destination LBA for the next phase for non-streamed data located on the reported defects in Defect Status Descriptor. The Host may and is recommended to retain the same information for streamed data located on the reported defects in Defect Status Descriptor. The Host concludes this phase with a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command. The Drive will finish any pending verification and report all found defective writable units (see 6.47.3 Command Execution). The Host is expected to have formed a list of defects pairs (data, LBA) at the end of this phase.

The TSR writes are limited to complete ECC blocks to avoid read-write-modify by the Drive in phase two. (Read-write-modify in phase two could fail in case the ECC block is damaged during phase one.)

4.7.2.2 Phase two – hardware defect management

During this phase, for all non-streamed data, the Host issues write commands with TSR bit set to zero (rewritable media such as BD-RE) or one (write-once media such a BD-R) for defective writable units reported by the Drive during the previous phase. Now the Drive can proceed with automatic reallocation / defect management.

For streamed data, the Host can decide to take 3 different actions:

- a. Nothing. The streamed content can be played back and interruptions in the stream are possible, due to the bad Clusters, there are no timing problems; This permits simplification of the Host implementation and does not require to retain defect pairs for streamed content at phase one.
- b. Software reallocation. For rewritable media, Host deduces from the defect list free good locations where it reallocates the data. For write-once media, the unrecorded locations are assumed good. For both rewritable and write-once media, the Host updates the file system information to reflect this reallocation. Notice this is performed using allocation descriptors of the data and not using a

remapping table. This is also not a phase two, but a new phase one (to avoid hardware reallocation). There is a potential recursion if new defects are found, however the recursion is ended by exhausting the free space of the media. The reallocated streamed content plays without problems and no timing problems.

- c. Hardware remapping. Host uses the defect pairs list from the phase one to rewrite the bad Clusters data and generates a linear replacement. This stream will have all the content but will have timing problems during real-time playback. The content can eventually be copied to a good piece of media.

The action b) is recommended.

4.7.3 Implementation notes for the Drive

The Drive may simplify its implementation by using the deferred error report possibility brought by the TSR error reporting threshold only for sequential writing. For non-sequential writing, the simplified implementation would perform verification immediately. For sequential writing, the simplified implementation would memorize the starting LBA of the sequential writing. Then it would perform verification when the LBA of a write command minus the memorized LBA equal or higher the error reporting threshold, or when a non-sequential write interrupts the sequential writing, or when the Drive finds an opportune earlier switch to verification.

The Drive may re-use defect tables (DFL) cache from the media to temporarily store defect information discovered during the phase one, so it does not need additional memory to perform TSR. This ensures that the Drive is capable to store at least as much defect information as the media physical specification is able to handle. If more defects than the media physical specification is able to handle is found before the Drive could report them to the Host through GET PERFORMANCE command issued by the Host, Drive shall behave as if the DFL list has been exhausted (write failure). The Drive shall forget defect information already reported to the Host through GET PERFORMANCE response if the DFL is about to be exhausted.

If the application is terminated unexpectedly before completing Phase 2, defective Clusters which are found during Phase 1 may remain as unreadable. If WRITE command is issued to such Cluster at a later time and if Read-Modify-Write is necessary, the other sectors in the Cluster will remain as unreadable until all of those sectors are overwritten.

On BD-RE discs, to avoid this problem, it is recommended that DFL entry type of PBA with the Status 2 field = 0100b is used by BD Drives to register the defective Clusters which are found during Phase 1 of TSR recording. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detail of the PBA entry and the Status 2 field.

For Write-Once media, write commands are issued by the Host with TSR bit set to one for both phases. The Drive can distinguish write commands from phase one and phase two by the respectively recorded or unrecorded status of the LBA in CDB. If the LBA is unrecorded, this is phase one and the Drive shall behave as described in 4.7.2.1 (recording and error detection). If the LBA is recorded, this is phase two and the Drive shall behave as described in 4.7.2.2 (remapping the data to spare area). However the Drive shall reject attempt to miss-use the TSR bit if the LBA is recorded but absent from the DFL and defect information discovered during the phase one.

For Rewritable media, write commands with TSR bit set to one are issued by the Host only during phase one.

This page is intentionally blank

5 Features and Profiles for BD Drives

5.1 Feature Descriptions

5.1.1 Write Protect Feature (0004h)

This Feature identifies reporting capability and changing capability for Write protection status of the Drive. The Write Protect Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 8.

Table 8 — Write Protect Feature Descriptor

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------|-----|------|------|------------|---------|--|
| 0 | (MSB) Feature Code = 0004h (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | Version = 0010b | | | | Persistent | Current | |
| 3 | Additional Length = 04h | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | DWP | WDCB | SPWP | SSWPP | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0004h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Current bit, when set to one, indicates that Drive is capable of changing some write protect status on the medium surface. This bit shall be set to zero if the Drive is unable to set/release some write protect status on the medium surface. The reporting capability of the Write Protect status is persistent and shall be supported regardless of the setting of the Current bit.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Supports SWPP (SSWPP) bit indicates that the Drive supports SWPP bit of Timeout & Protect mode page. This bit does not affect Current bit of this Feature Descriptor. If SWPP bit is set to one, the Drive shall support SWPP bit of Timeout & Protect mode page.

The Supports PWP (SPWP) bit indicates that the Drive supports set/release PWP status. If the SPWP bit is set to one, the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = C0h shall be supported.

The WDCB bit indicates that the Drive supports writing the Write Inhibit DCB on DVD+RW media. If the WDCB bit is set to one, the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type =0 and Format Code = 30h shall be supported.

The DWP bit indicates that the Drive supports reading/writing the Disc Write Protect PAC on BD-R/-RE media. If the DWP bit is set to one, the READ/SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type =1 and Format Code = 30h shall be supported.

If Drive supports reporting Write Protection status but does not support changing, the Drive returns this Feature descriptor, however the Current bit is never set to one in the descriptor.

Drives with installed medium that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 9.

Table 9 — Write Protect Feature commands

| Op Code | Command Description | Reference |
|---------|--|-----------|
| ADh | READ DISC (DVD) STRUCTURE Format code C0h when WDCB = 0 Format codes 30h and C0h when WDCB = 1 | MMC-4 |
| | READ DISC (BD) STRUCTURE Format codes 30h, C0h when DWP = 1 | 6.17 |
| BFh | SEND DISC (DVD) STRUCTURE Format code C0h when SPWP = 1 Format code 30h when WDCB = 1 | MMC-4 |
| | SEND DISC (BD) STRUCTURE Format codes 30h when DWP = 1 | 6.23 |

5.1.2 Incremental Streaming Writable Feature (0021h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write data to a contiguous region, and is able to append data to a limited number of locations on the media. On CD media, this is known as packet recording, on DVD media it is known as Incremental Recording, and on a BD-R disc it is known as SRM recording.

The Feature descriptor response data is defined in Table 10.

Table 10 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Descriptor Format

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|-------|-------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------|---|------|------------|---------|-------|--|
| 0 | (MSB) | Feature Code = 0021h | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | Version = 0011b | | | Persistent | Current | | |
| 3 | | Additional Length | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | Data Block Types Supported | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | TRIO | ARSV | BUF | | |
| 7 | | Number of Link Sizes (L) | | | | | | | | |
| 7+1 | | Link Size #1 | | | | | | | | |
| 7+2 | | Link Size #2 | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | ... | | | | | | | | |
| 7+L | | Link Size #L | | | | | | | | |
| 7+L+1 | | Pad bytes #1 | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | ... | | | | | | | | |
| 7+L+P | | Pad bytes #P P = 3-{(L+3) MOD 4} | | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0021h.

The Version field is set to 0011b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4 + (Number of Link Sizes) + (Number of Pad bytes).

The Data Block Types Supported field is a bit field that identifies the supported Data Types of CD discs as specified in the MMC-4 Write Parameters mode page description. If the Drive does not support CD discs, this field shall be set to zero. A bit set to zero indicates the Data Type is not supported. A bit set to one indicates the Data Type is supported. Bit 0 equates to Data Type 0 and bit 15 equates to Data Type 15, etc.

Track Resource Information and Open (TRIO) bit provides a way for the Drive to report its support for the Track Resources Disc Information of the READ DISC INFORMATION command and the Open bit of READ TRACK INFORMATION command. The meaning of TRIO is dependent upon the setting of the Current bit as shown in Table 11.

Table 11 — Meaning of TRIO bit

| Current bit | TRIO bit | Meaning |
|-------------|----------|--|
| 0 | 0 | The Drive claims no support for either Track Resources Disc Information or the Open bit for any supported media. |
| 0 | 1 | The Drive supports Track Resources Disc Information and the Open bit for some supported media. |
| 1 | 0 | The Drive claims no support for either Track Resources Disc Information or the Open bit for the currently mounted media. |
| 1 | 1 | The Drive supports Track Resources Disc Information and the Open bit for the currently mounted media. |

Address Mode Reservation (ARSV) bit provides a way for the Drive to report its support for Address Mode reservation of the RESERVE TRACK command. The meaning of ARSV is dependent upon the setting of the Current bit as shown in Table 12.

Table 12 — Meaning of ARSV bit

| Current bit | ARSV bit | Meaning |
|-------------|----------|---|
| 0 | 0 | The Drive claims no support for Address Mode reservation for any supported media. |
| 0 | 1 | The Drive supports Address Mode reservation for some supported media. |
| 1 | 0 | The Drive claims no support for Address Mode reservation for the currently mounted media. |
| 1 | 1 | The Drive supports Address Mode reservation for the currently mounted media. |

Note: The value of the TRIO bit and the ARSV bit are dynamic and changed according to the mounted disc type.

If the BUF bit is set to 1, the Drive is capable of loss-less linking. The BUF bit shall be set to 1 for BD-R media.

The Number of Link Sizes shall specify the number of link sizes available for the current media. For CD media, this field should be 1. For DVD-R, this field should be 2. For a BD-R disc formatted in SRM, this field is set to 1.

Each Link Size field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per link. Links occur on sequentially written media between independent write operations. The link size does not include any logical blocks written by the Drive to satisfy the writable unit specified by the Blocking field in the Random Readable Feature. This field is 7 for CD-R media, and may be 0, 1, or 16 for DVD media. This field

contains 0 for BD-R. Link Size fields are reported by the Drive in the Drive's preferred order, most desirable first.

The Pad field shall contain zeros. The number of Pad bytes shall be $3 - \{(\text{Number of Link Sizes} + 3) \text{ MODULO } 4\}$. The Pad field is present to make the length of the Feature Descriptor a multiple of 4 bytes.

If a Drive reports this Feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 13.

Table 13 — Command Support Required by the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature

| Op Code | Command Description | Reference |
|---------|---|-----------|
| A1h | BLANK (Use of this command is not defined for BD) | MMC-4 |
| 5Bh | CLOSE TRACK/SESSION | 6.2 |
| 51h | READ DISC INFORMATION with Data type = 000b | 6.16 |
| 52h | READ TRACK INFORMATION with Open bit = 0 | 6.20 |
| 53h | RESERVE TRACK with ARSV bit in CDB = 0 | 6.22 |
| 54h | SEND OPC INFORMATION (Shall be supported if OPC information is ever returned in the READ DISC INFORMATION return data.) | 6.24 |
| 35h | SYNCHRONIZE CACHE | 6.27 |
| 2Ah | WRITE (10) | 6.30 |

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 14.

Table 14 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Parameters

| Page Code | Mode page | Reference |
|-----------|---|-----------|
| 05h | Write Parameters (Use of this mode page is not defined for BD) | MMC-4 |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.1.3 Formattable Feature (0023h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that can format media into logical blocks. The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 15.

Table 15 — Formattable Feature Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------|--------|--------|------------|---------|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Feature Code = 0023h | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | Version = 0001b | | | Persistent | Current | |
| 3 | | Additional Length = 8 | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Options for formatting BD-RE | | | | | | | |
| | | Reserved | | | RENoSA | Expand | QCert | Cert | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Options for formatting BD-R | | | | | | | |
| | | Reserved | | | | | | RRM | |
| 9 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0023h.

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active. If a blank BD-R disc or a write enabled BD-RE disc is present and the response to the TEST UNIT READY command is GOOD status, then the Current bit of this Feature shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 8.

If the BD-RE Profile is not supported, byte 4 of the Formattable Feature Descriptor shall be set to zero.

If the BD-RE Profile is supported, the FORMAT UNIT command shall support Format Types 00h and 30h with Format Sub-type 00b. Quick Reformat shall be supported.

If the Cert bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Sub-type 10b (Full Certification) on formatting BD-RE disc. If the Cert bit is set to one, Format Type 30h with Format Sub-type 10b shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If the QCert bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Sub-type 11b (Quick Certification) during formatting of previously formatted BD-RE disc. If the QCert bit is set to one, Format Type 30h with Format Sub-type 11b shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If the Expand bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Type 01h (Spare Area Expansion). If the Expand bit is set to one, Format Type 01h is supported for the expansion of the spare area on formatted BD-RE discs.

If the RENoSA bit is set to zero, Format Type 31h (BD-RE with no spares allocated) is not supported for BD-RE disc. If the RENoSA bit is set to one, Format Type 31h shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If no BD-R Profile is supported, byte 8 of the Formattable Feature Descriptor shall be set to zero.

If any BD-R Profiles are supported, then when a blank BD-R disc is present and ready:

1. If a WRITE (10), WRITE (12), WRITE AND VERIFY (10) or RESERVE TRACK command is sent to the Drive, then the disc shall be formatted as SRM-POW with no spare areas allocated.

2. If the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select a BD-R format, SRM-POW with defect management shall be an option (Format Sub-types 00b and 01b of Format Types 00h and 32h).
3. If the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select a BD-R format, SRM+POW shall be an option (Format Sub-type 00b of Format Types 00h and 32h).

If the RRM bit is set to one, then the FORMAT UNIT command shall provide RRM as an option (Format Sub-type 10b of Format Types 00h and 32h).

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 16.

Table 16 — Formattable Feature commands

| Op Code | Command | Reference |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 04h | FORMAT UNIT, Format Types 00h and Format sub-types 00b | 6.3 |
| 23h | READ FORMAT CAPACITIES | 6.18 |
| 03h | REQUEST SENSE | 6.21 |
| 2Fh | VERIFY (10) | 6.29 |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.1.4 BD-R Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) Feature

A Drive that reports the Feature is able to provide Logical Block overwrite service on BD-R discs that are formatted as SRM+POW. The Feature descriptor is defined in Table 17.

Table 17 — Pseudo-OverWrite Feature Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|-----------------------|---|-----------------|---|---|------------|---------|---|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) | Feature Code = 0038h | | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | Version = 0000b | | | Persistent | Current | | |
| 3 | | Additional Length = 4 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0038h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

When this Feature is current, the Drive shall provide Pseudo-overwrite services as described in UDF 2.60. The physical implementation shall be according to the rules for Logical OverWrite described in *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications*. See 4.4.4.4 for a description of implementation requirements. This Feature shall not be current on multi-session discs.

Table 18 — Pseudo OverWrite Feature commands

| Op Code | Command | Reference |
|---------|---|-----------|
| 51h | READ DISC INFORMATION with Data Type = 010b | 6.16 |
| 53h | RESERVE TRACK with support of the ARSV bit | 6.22 |

5.1.5 The BD Read Feature (0040h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read control structures and user data from the BD disc specified by the Class Bitmaps. The BD Read Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 19.

Table 19 — BD Read Feature Descriptor

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|--|---|------------|------------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 0 | (MSB) Feature Code = 40h (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | Version = 0000b | | | Persistent | Current |
| 3 | Additional Length = 1Ch | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Class 0 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Read Support | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 9 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 1 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Read Support | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 11 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 2 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Read Support | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 13 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 3 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Read Support | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 15 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| 16 - 23 | Class Bitmaps identifying BD-R Read Support | | | | | | | |
| 24 - 31 | Class Bitmaps identifying BD-ROM Read Support | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0040h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid. If a BD-ROM disc is present and ready, the Current bit shall be set to one. When a BD-R disc or a BD-RE disc is present, the Current bit shall be set to one.

If a Drive recognizes that the mounted BD disc is not readable by the Drive (e.g., unsupported Class), the Current bit is set to zero even if it is a BD disc.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 1Ch.

Bytes 8 and 9 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 0 that this Drive is capable of reading. Bytes 10 and 11 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 1 that this Drive is capable of reading. Bytes 12 and 13 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 2 that this Drive is capable of reading. Bytes 14 and 15 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 3

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

that this Drive is capable of reading. If the Version K bit (K = 0...15) of the Class M (M = 0...3) bit map is set to zero, the Drive claims no read capabilities for BD-RE discs of Class M and Version K. If the Version K bit of Class M is set to one, the Drive is able to read BD-RE discs of Class M and Version K. Bytes 16 - 23 contain a bit map identifying the Class/Version of BD-R media that this Drive is capable of reading:

- Bytes 16 and 17 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 0 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 18 and 19 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 1 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 20 and 21 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 2 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 22 and 23 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 3 that this Drive is capable of reading.

The Version bit meanings are as defined for BD-RE media.

Bytes 24 - 31 contain a bit map identifying the Class/version of BD-ROM media that this Drive is capable of reading:

- Bytes 24 and 25 contain a bit map of versions of BD-ROM media Class 0 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 26 and 27 contain a bit map of versions of BD-ROM media Class 1 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 28 and 29 contain a bit map of versions of BD-ROM media Class 2 that this Drive is capable of reading.
- Bytes 30 and 31 contain a bit map of versions of BD-ROM media Class 3 that this Drive is capable of reading.

The Version bit meanings are as defined for BD-RE media.

If a Drive reports this Feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 20.

Table 20 — Command Support Required by the BD Read Feature

| Op Code | Command Description | Reference |
|---------|--|-----------|
| 28h | READ (10) | 6.12 |
| A8h | READ (12) | 6.13 |
| ADh | READ DISC STRUCTURE (format = 0, 30h, FFh) | 6.17 |
| 43h | READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (format 0 and 1) | 6.19 |

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 21.

Table 21 — BD Read Feature Parameters

| Page Code | Mode page | Reference |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 01h | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page | 7.2 |

5.1.6 The BD Write Feature (0041h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write control structures and user data to BD discs specified by the Class Bitmaps. The BD Write Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 22.

This Feature becomes current when formatted BD-RE disc or non-finalized BD-R disc is mounted.

If a BD disc is permanently write protected (e.g., a BD-R disc is closed or the password field of DWP PAC for BD-R/RE is set to all FFh), this Feature shall not be current.

Table 22 — BD Write Feature Descriptor

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|--|------------|-----------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| Byte | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Feature Code = 0041h | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | Version = 0000b | | | | Persistent | Current |
| 3 | Additional Length = 14h | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | SVNR |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Class 0 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Write Support | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 9 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 1 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Write Support | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 11 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 2 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Write Support | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 13 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| Class 3 Bitmap identifying BD-RE Write Support | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | Version 15 | Version 14 | Version 13 | Version 12 | Version 11 | Version 10 | Version 9 | Version 8 |
| 15 | Version 7 | Version 6 | Version 5 | Version 4 | Version 3 | Version 2 | Version 1 | Version 0 |
| 16 - 23 | Class Bitmaps identifying BD-R Write Support | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0041h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 14h.

If the SVNR bit (Supports Verify Not Required) is set to one, then the Drive supports WRITE (12) command with the VNR bit set to one.

Bytes 8 and 9 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 0 that this Drive is capable of writing. Bytes 10 and 11 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 1 that this Drive is

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

capable of writing. Bytes 12 and 13 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 2 that this Drive is capable of writing. Bytes 14 and 15 contain a bit map of versions of BD-RE media Class 3 that this Drive is capable of writing. If the Version K bit (K = 0...15) of the Class M (M = 0...3) bit map is set to zero, the Drive claims no write capabilities for BD-RE discs of Class M and Version K. If the Version K bit of Class M is set to one, the Drive is able to write BD-RE discs of Class M and Version K.

Bytes 16 - 23 contain a bit map identifying the Class/version of BD-R media that this Drive is capable of recording:

- Bytes 16 and 17 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 0 that this Drive is capable of recording.
- Bytes 18 and 19 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 1 that this Drive is capable of recording.
- Bytes 20 and 21 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 2 that this Drive is capable of recording.
- Bytes 22 and 23 contain a bit map of versions of BD-R media Class 3 that this Drive is capable of recording.

The Version bit meanings are as defined for BD-RE media.

If a Drive reports this Feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 23.

Table 23 — Command Support Required by the BD Write Feature

| Op Code | Command Description | Reference |
|---------|------------------------------------|-----------|
| 04h | FORMAT UNIT | 6.3 |
| 2Ah | WRITE (10) | 6.30 |
| AAh | WRITE (12) with VNR = 1 if SVNR =1 | 6.31 |

5.1.7 TSR Feature

A Drive that reports the TSR (Timely Safe Recording) Feature is able to detect and report defective writable units and to manage the defect or not according to instructions from the Host. The Feature descriptor is defined in Table 24.

Table 24 — TSR Feature Descriptor

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---|-----------------|---|---|------------|---------|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Feature Code = 0042h (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | Version = 0000b | | | Persistent | Current | |
| 3 | Additional Length = 0 | | | | | | | |

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0042h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero, indicating that this Feature may change its current status.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 00h.

When this Feature is present and current, the Drive provides error detection and reporting within selectable threshold, and controllable hardware defect management.

If a Drive reports this Feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 25.

Table 25 — Command Support Required by the TSR Feature

| Op Code | Command Description | Reference |
|---------|--|-----------|
| ACh | GET PERFORMANCE (Support for Type = 2 is mandatory) | 6.6 |
| 35h | SYNCHRONIZE CACHE | 6.27 |
| 2Ah | WRITE (10) | 6.30 |
| AAh | WRITE (12) | 6.31 |

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 26.

Table 26 — TSR Feature Parameters

| Page Code | Mode page | Reference |
|-----------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 01h | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page | 7.2 |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.1.8 Real Time Streaming Feature (0107h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to perform reading and writing within Host specified (and Drive verified) performance ranges. This Feature also indicates whether the Drive supports the Stream playback operation.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 27.

Table 27 — Real Time Streaming Feature Descriptor

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|----------------------------|---|-----------------|-----|------|------------|---------|-------|
| Byte | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Feature Code = 0107h | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | Version = 0100b | | | Persistent | Current | |
| 3 | Additional Length = 04h | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | RBCB | SCS | MP2A | WSPD | SW | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |

The Version Field shall be set to 0100b.

Table 28 — Command Support Required by the Real Time Streaming Feature

| Op Code | Command Description |
|---------|--|
| ACh | GET PERFORMANCE with Type field of 00h, and Type field 01h when SW bit is set to one and Type field of 03h when WSPD bit is set to one |
| A8h | READ (12) |
| 5Ch | READ BUFFER CAPACITY with Block bit of 1 (Shall be implemented when RBCB is set to 1) |
| B6h | SET STREAMING (WRC field of SET STREAMING command shall be supported when WSPD bit is set to 1.) |
| AAh | WRITE (12) with Streaming bit when SW bit is set to one |

Refer to MMC for the other descriptions of Real Time Streaming Feature.

5.2 Profile Descriptions

5.2.1 Profile 0040h: BD-ROM

Drives identifying Profile 0040h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 29.

Table 29 — Mandatory Features for BD-ROM

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Description |
|----------------|------------------------------|---|
| 0000h | Profile List | A list of all Profiles supported by the Drive |
| 0001h | Core | Mandatory behavior for all Drives |
| 0002h | Morphing | Drive changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host |
| 0003h | Removable Medium | The medium may be removed from the Drive |
| 0010h | Random Readable ¹ | Read ability for storage Drives with random addressing |
| 0040h | BD Read | The ability to read BD specific structures |
| 0100h | Power Management | Host and Drive directed power management |
| 0105h | Timeout | Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time |
| 0107h | Real-time Streaming | Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters. |

¹PP bit in Random Readable Feature shall be set to 1.

Table 30 shows the decomposition of the Profile into Features and Features into commands and mode pages.

Table 30 — BD-ROM Profile Decomposition

| | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|--|
| BD-ROM Profile | Core Feature | Get Configuration command, Get Event Status Notification command, Inquiry command, Mode Select (10) command, Mode Sense (10) command, Request Sense command, Test Unit Ready command |
| | Morphing Feature | Get Configuration command, Get Event Status Notification command, Prevent Allow Medium Removal command |
| | Removable Medium Feature | Mechanism Status command, Prevent Allow Medium Removal command, Start Stop Unit command |
| | Random Readable Feature | Read Capacity command, Read (10) command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| | BD Read Feature | Read (10) command, Read (12) command, Read Disc Structure command, Read TOC/PMA/ATIP command |
| | Power Management Feature | Get Event Status Notification command, Start Stop Unit command, Power Condition mode page |
| | Timeout Feature | Timeout & Protect mode page |
| | Real-time Streaming | Get Performance command, Read (12) command, Read Buffer Capacity command ¹ , Set Streaming command, Write (12) command ¹ |

¹The Read Buffer Capacity command and the Write (12) command are commands that are mandatory for the Real-time Streaming Feature only when stream writing is supported.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.2.2 Profile 0041h: BD-R Sequential Recording (SRM) Profile

Drives identifying Profile 0041h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 31.

Table 31 — Features for BD-R SRM Profile

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 0000h | Profile List | A list of all Profiles supported by the Drive |
| 0001h | Core | Mandatory behavior for all Drives |
| 0002h | Morphing | Drive changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host |
| 0003h | Removable Medium | The medium may be removed from the Drive |
| 0010h | Random Readable ¹ | Read ability for storage Drives with random addressing |
| 0021h | Incremental Streaming Writable | Write support for sequential recording |
| 0023h | Formattable | Support for formatting of media |
| 0024h | Defect Management ² | The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space |
| 0038h | BD-R POW ³ | The ability to permit logical overwrites from the user data area of the disc |
| 0040h | BD Read | The ability to read BD specific structures |
| 0041h | BD Write | The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures |
| 0100h | Power Management | Host and Drive directed power management |
| 0105h | Timeout | Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time |
| 0107h | Real-time Streaming | Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters. |

¹PP bit in Random Readable Feature shall be set to 1.
²Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.
³If both the BD-R SRM Profile and the BD-R POW Feature are current, then the basic characteristics of sequential recording are maintained, but limited Logical Overwrite is permitted. Such a disc is SRM+POW.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 32 shows the commands and mode pages required when the BD-R SRM Profile is current.

Table 32 — BD-R SRM Profile Decomposition

| Features | Commands and mode pages |
|--|--|
| Core | Get Configuration command, Get Event Status Notification command, Inquiry command, Mode Select (10) command, Mode Sense (10) command, Request Sense command, Test Unit Ready command |
| Morphing | Get Configuration command, Get Event Status Notification command, Prevent Allow Medium Removal command |
| Removable Medium | MECHANISM STATUS command, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, START STOP UNIT command |
| Random Readable | READ CAPACITY command, READ (10) command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| Incremental Streaming Writable | CLOSE TRACK SESSION command, READ DISC INFORMATION command, READ TRACK INFORMATION command, RESERVE TRACK command, SEND OPC INFORMATION command, SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command, WRITE (10) command |
| Formattable | FORMAT UNIT command, READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command, VERIFY (10) command, REQUEST SENSE command |
| Defect Management | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| BD-R POW | READ DISC INFORMATION command with Data Type=010b (POW Resource), RESERVE TRACK command with ARSV=1b |
| BD Read | READ (10) command, READ (12) command, READ DISC STRUCTURE command, READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| BD Write | FORMAT UNIT command, WRITE (10) command |
| Power Management | GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, START STOP UNIT command, Power Condition mode page |
| Timeout | Timeout & Protect mode page |
| Real-time Streaming | GET PERFORMANCE command, READ (12) command, READ BUFFER CAPACITY command ¹ , SET STREAMING command, WRITE (12) command ¹ |
| <p>Note: This table only lists mandatory commands and mode pages for BD Drives required by a Feature. For the other media, different requirements may be described in the description of each Feature.</p> | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.2.3 Profile 0042h: BD-R Random Recording (RRM) Profile

Drives identifying Profile 0042h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 33.

Table 33 — Features for BD-R RRM Profile

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 0000h | Profile List | A list of all Profiles supported by the Drive |
| 0001h | Core | Mandatory behavior for all Drives |
| 0002h | Morphing | Drive changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host |
| 0003h | Removable Medium | The medium may be removed from the Drive |
| 0010h | Random Readable ¹ | Read ability for storage Drives with random addressing |
| 0023h | Formattable | Support for formatting of media |
| 0024h | Defect Management ² | The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space |
| 0025h | Write Once | Write support for write-once media that is writable in random order |
| 0040h | BD Read | The ability to read BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures |
| 0041h | BD Write | The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures |
| 0100h | Power Management | Host and Drive directed power management |
| 0105h | Timeout | Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time |
| 0107h | Real-time Streaming | Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters. |

¹PP bit in Random Readable Feature shall be set to 1.
²Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 34 shows the commands and mode pages required when the BD-R RRM Profile is current.

Table 34 — BD-R RRM Profile Decomposition

| Features | Commands and mode pages |
|---|--|
| Core | GET CONFIGURATION command, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, INQUIRY command, MODE SELECT (10) command, MODE SENSE (10) command, REQUEST SENSE command, TEST UNIT READY command |
| Morphing | GET CONFIGURATION command, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command |
| Removable Medium | MECHANISM STATUS command, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, START STOP UNIT command |
| Random Readable | READ CAPACITY command, READ (10) command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| Formattable | FORMAT UNIT command, READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command, VERIFY (10) command, REQUEST SENSE command |
| Defect Management | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| Write Once | READ CAPACITY command, SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command, WRITE (10), WRITE AND VERIFY (10), Read-Write Error Recovery mode page ¹ |
| BD Read | READ (10) command, READ (12) command, READ DISC STRUCTURE command, READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| BD Write | FORMAT UNIT command, WRITE (10) command |
| Power Management | GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, START STOP UNIT command, Power Condition mode page |
| Timeout | Timeout & Protect mode page |
| Real-time Streaming | GET PERFORMANCE command, READ (12) command, READ BUFFER CAPACITY command ¹ , SET STREAMING command, SET READ AHEAD command, WRITE (12) command ¹ |
| ¹ Implementing the command or mode page is conditional according to the Feature description. See the description of the applicable Feature in order to determine the actual requirement. | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

5.2.4 Profile 0043h: BD-RE

Drives identifying Profile 0043h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 35.

Table 35 — Mandatory Features for BD-RE

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Description |
|----------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 0000h | Profile List | A list of all Profiles supported by the Drive |
| 0001h | Core | Mandatory behavior for all Drives |
| 0002h | Morphing | Drive changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host |
| 0003h | Removable Medium | The medium may be removed from the Drive |
| 0010h | Random Readable ¹ | Read ability for storage Drives with random addressing |
| 0020h | Random Writable | Write support for randomly addressed writes |
| 0023h | Formattable | Support for formatting of media |
| 0024h | Defect Management ² | The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space |
| 0040h | BD Read | The ability to read BD specific structures |
| 0041h | BD Write | The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures |
| 0100h | Power Management | Host and Drive directed power management |
| 0105h | Timeout | Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time |
| 0107h | Real-time Streaming | Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters. |

¹PP bit in Random Readable Feature shall be set to 1.
²Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Table 36 shows the decomposition of the Profile into Features and Features into commands and mode pages.

Table 36 — BD-RE Profile Decomposition

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| BD-RE Profile | Core Feature | GET CONFIGURATION command, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, INQUIRY command, MODE SELECT (10) command, MODE SENSE (10) command, REQUEST SENSE command, TEST UNIT READY command |
| | Morphing Feature | GET CONFIGURATION command, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command |
| | Removable Medium Feature | MECHANISM STATUS command, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, START STOP UNIT command |
| | Random Readable Feature | READ CAPACITY command, READ (10) command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| | Random Writable Feature | READ CAPACITY command, WRITE (10) command, WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command, SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command |
| | Formattable Feature | FORMAT UNIT command, READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command, VERIFY (10) command, REQUEST SENSE command |
| | BD Read Feature | READ (10) command, READ (12) command, READ DISC STRUCTURE command, READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command, Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| | Defect Management Feature | Read-Write Error Recovery mode page |
| | Power Management Feature | GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command, START STOP UNIT command, Power Condition mode page |
| | Timeout Feature | Timeout & Protect mode page |
| Real-time Streaming | GET PERFORMANCE command, READ (12) command, READ BUFFER CAPACITY command ¹ , SET STREAMING command, SET READ AHEAD command, WRITE (12) command ¹ | |
| ¹ Implementing the command or mode page is conditional according to the Feature description. See the description of the applicable Feature in order to determine the actual requirement. | | |

This page is intentionally blank

6 Commands for BD Drives

6.1 Overview

The commands described in this clause are defined uniquely for BD Multi-Media Drives or have a unique behavior when executed by a BD Multi-Media Drive.

The commands described in this clause are listed in Table 37. MMC-4 is the primary reference for the command descriptions. For a given command, modified/additional behavior necessary for the support of BD is described in the specified sub-clause.

Table 37 – Commands for BD Multi-Media Drives

| Command Name | Op Code | Reference |
|-------------------------------|---------|-----------|
| CLOSE TRACK SESSION | 5Bh | 6.2 |
| FORMAT UNIT | 04h | 6.3 |
| GET CONFIGURATION | 46h | 6.4 |
| GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION | 4Ah | 6.5 |
| GET PERFORMANCE | ACh | 6.6 |
| INQUIRY | 12h | 6.7 |
| MECHANISM STATUS | BDh | 6.8 |
| MODE SELECT (10) | 55h | 6.9 |
| MODE SENSE (10) | 5Ah | 6.10 |
| PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL | 1Eh | 6.11 |
| READ (10) | 28h | 6.12 |
| READ (12) | A8h | 6.13 |
| READ BUFFER CAPACITY | 5Ch | 6.14 |
| READ CAPACITY | 25h | 6.15 |
| READ DISC INFORMATION | 51h | 6.16 |
| READ DISC STRUCTURE | ADh | 6.17 |
| READ FORMAT CAPACITIES | 23h | 6.18 |
| READ TOC/PMA/ATIP | 43h | 6.19 |
| READ TRACK INFORMATION | 52h | 6.20 |
| REQUEST SENSE | 03h | 6.21 |
| RESERVE TRACK | 53h | 6.22 |
| SEND DISC STRUCTURE | BFh | 6.23 |
| SEND OPC INFORMATION | 54h | 6.24 |
| SET STREAMING | B6h | 6.25 |
| START STOP UNIT | 1Bh | 6.26 |
| SYNCHRONIZE CACHE | 35h | 6.27 |
| TEST UNIT READY | 00h | 6.28 |
| VERIFY (10) | 2Fh | 6.29 |
| WRITE (10) | 2Ah | 6.30 |
| WRITE (12) | AAh | 6.31 |
| WRITE AND VERIFY (10) | 2Eh | 6.32 |

6.2 CLOSE TRACK SESSION command

The CLOSE TRACK/SESSION command allows closure of either a Logical Track or a session.

6.2.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The CLOSE TRACK/SESSION CDB is shown in Table 38.

Table 38 — CLOSE TRACK SESSION CDB

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|----------------------|---|----------------------|---|----------------|---|-------|-------|
| 0 | Operation Code (5Bh) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | IMMED |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | Close Function | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | | Logical Track Number | | | | (LSB) | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Control | | | | | | | |

6.2.1.1 IMMED

The IMMED bit allows execution of the close function as an immediate operation. If IMMED is zero, then the requested close operation is processed to completion prior to returning status. If IMMED is one, then status is returned once the close operation has begun.

6.2.1.2 Close Function

Close Function definitions are media specific. See 6.2.2.1.1 through 6.2.2.1.4.

6.2.1.3 Logical Track Number

The Logical Track Number (T) is valid only when the Close Function = 001b. If T_{MAX} is the maximum Logical Track number currently defined on the disc and $T > T_{MAX}$, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.2.2 Command Execution

6.2.2.1 Close Functions for BD-R in SRM

6.2.2.1.1 Close Function 001b: Close a Logical Track

Close the Logical Track (SRR) identified by Logical Track Number field (T) in the CDB.

A BD-R SRR is closed by removing its number from the list of open SRRs in the SRRi. Padding is not required. Since the disc is not finalized, the updated SRRi shall be written into the current TDMA as a TDMS update unit. The actual write may be deferred.

If T is the invisible SRR, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense data shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL INFORMATION. If T is the incomplete SRR, then the length of T shall be set to its recorded length, creating a new, invisible SRR with Logical Track Number = T+1.

6.2.2.1.2 Close Function 010b: Close the Open Session

Close the currently open session on a SRM-POW Disc.

If the currently mounted disc is formatted SRM+POW, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the currently mounted disc is SRM-POW and the currently open session is empty, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

If the currently mounted disc is SRM-POW and the currently open session is non-empty, each open SRR in the last Session shall be closed by the Drive prior to closing the session.

The Drive shall finalize the disc if there is no remaining space for recording of a user data on the disc.

6.2.2.1.3 Close Function 110b: Close the Open Session and Finalize the Disc

Close the last session and finalize the disc. Once this close function has been processed, no more writing to the disc is allowed. Each open SRR in the last Session shall be closed by the Drive prior to closing the session.

The disc shall be closed by writing the four DMA zones of the disc and the DMA access indicator.

6.2.2.1.4 Reserved Close Functions

When a BD-R disc is present, Close Functions 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, and 111b are reserved. If the Close Function is reserved for the currently mounted medium the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.2.2.2 Immediate Operation

During a Close Track/Session operation that began with the IMMED bit set to one, the Drive shall respond to commands as follows:

- a) In response to all commands except REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, and TEST UNIT READY, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS.
- b) In response to the TEST UNIT READY command, the Drive should return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS. Some legacy implementations allowed for a GOOD status response to a TEST UNIT READY command. This behavior is not recommended.
- c) In response to the INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, the Drive shall respond as commanded.
- d) In response to the REQUEST SENSE command, unless an error has occurred, the Drive shall return with SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS or NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS, with the sense key specific bytes set for progress indication.

If the Drive changes to a not ready state during execution, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. When execution is completed and the state returns to ready, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. If the Closing a Track or Session results in one or more Features changing currency, an additional Operational Change Event shall be generated.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.3 FORMAT UNIT

The FORMAT UNIT command formats a medium into Host addressable logical blocks according to Host defined options. The medium may be certified and control structures created for the management of the medium and defects. The medium may or may not be altered.

6.3.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The FORMAT UNIT command descriptor block is shown in Table 39.

Table 39 — FORMAT UNIT command descriptor block

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---------|---------|-------------|---|-------|
| 0 | | Operation Code (04h) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | FmtData | CmpList | Format Code | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | (MSB) | Interleave Value | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Control Byte | | | | | | | |

6.3.1.1 FmtData

If the FmtData bit is zero, there is no parameter list. If FmtData is one, a parameter list is available from the Host. For all Multi-media Drives, FmtData shall be set to one. If FmtData is zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.1.2 CmpList

For recordable BD discs, CmpList bit shall be set to zero. If CmpList is set to one, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.1.3 Format Code

The Format Code identifies the parameter list format. When BD-R/BD-RE disc is present, the Format Code shall be set to one (001b).

6.3.1.4 Interleave Value

For BD, Interleave Value shall be zero. If Interleave Value is not set to zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.2 Format Parameter List

The FORMAT UNIT parameter list (Table 40) consists of three descriptors: the Format List Header, the Initialization Pattern Descriptor, and the Format Descriptor.

Table 40 — Format Unit Parameter List

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------------|-----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 — 3 | | Format List Header | | | | | | | |
| 4 — n | | Initialization Pattern Descriptor (present if IP = 1) | | | | | | | |
| n+1 to n+8 | | Format Descriptor | | | | | | | |

6.3.2.1 Format List Header

The Format List Header (Table 41) provides several format control bits. Drives that implement these bits give Hosts additional control over the formatting operation. If the Host attempts to select any function not implemented by the Drive, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Table 41 — Format List Header

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|--------------------------------------|------|------|------|----|---------|-------|----|
| 0 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | FOV | DPRY | DCRT | STPF | IP | Try-out | IMMED | VS |
| 2 | | (MSB) Format Descriptor Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |

If the Format Options Valid (FOV) bit is zero, the Drive shall use its default settings for the values of DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out. For recordable BD discs, the defaults shall be all bits set to zero.

If FOV is one, the Drive shall examine the setting of the DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out. When BD-R disc is present, the DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, Try-out, IMMED, and VS bits are defined as follows:

Disable primary (DPRY), Disable Certification (DCRT), Stop Format (STPF), Initialization Pattern (IP), and Try-out bits are reserved and shall be set to zero. If any of these bits is set to one, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If the immediate (IMMED) bit is zero, status shall be returned only after the format operation has completed. If the IMMED bit is set to one, the Drive shall return status as soon as the CDB and the Format Descriptor have been validated and the format process has begun.

The Vendor Specific (VS) bit has a vendor-specific definition.

The Format Descriptor Length field in the Format list header specifies the total length in bytes of the Format descriptor. The Format Descriptor Length shall be set to 8. If any other value is found in this field, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.3.2.2 Format Descriptor

When the CDB Format Code is 001b, a Format Descriptor is included in the FORMAT UNIT Parameter List. The Format Descriptor (Table 42) is a structure that is 8 bytes in length.

Table 42 — Format Code 001b Format Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|--------------------------|---|---|---|-----------------|---|-------|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Number of Blocks | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Format Type | | | | Format Sub-type | | | |
| 5 | (MSB) | Type Dependent Parameter | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |

6.3.2.2.1 Number of Blocks

The Number of Blocks field provides a method for specifying the number of addressable blocks that shall be formatted for the entire disc. The method of specification is dependent upon the Format Type.

6.3.2.2.2 Format Type

The Format Type field specifies the type of formatting.

If a Drive supports BD-RE Profile, the Drive shall support Format Types 00h and 30h. Format Types 01h and 31h are optional for BD-RE discs.

When a BD-R disc is present, only Format Types 00h and 32h shall be supported.

If a previously formatted BD-R disc is present, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM - INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM (05/30/06).

6.3.2.2.3 Format Sub-type

The Format Sub-type field specifies additional behavior beyond that specified by the Format Type code.

6.3.2.2.4 Type Dependent Parameter

Type Dependent Parameter field depends on Format Type.

6.3.3 Command Execution

6.3.3.1 Format Type = 00h, BD-R

Table 43 shows the Format Descriptor for Format Type 00h.

Table 43 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 00h)

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-----------------|-------|--|
| 0 | (MSB) | Number of Blocks | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Format Type = 00h | | | | | | Format Sub-type | | |
| 5 | (MSB) | Block Length = 0800h | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | | |

Format Type 00h requires that the Drive processes the formatting process by using its default User Data Zone size, default spares allocation, and default TDMA allocation.

Format Sub-type selects a sub-type of format Type 00h for BD-R as shown in Table 44.

Table 44 — Format Sub-type Field

| Format Sub-type Value | Description |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 00b | SRM+POW |
| 01b | SRM-POW with Spare Area |
| 10b | RRM |
| 11b | Reserved |

The Drive ignores the Number of Blocks field, and the Block Length field. The total User Data Zone on the disc shall be the default size as reported by the Format Type 00h Formattable Capacity descriptor returned by READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

As a part of the format process, the Drive shall allocate TDMA and spare areas according to vendor specific defaults.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 45 shows an example of defaults for different BD-R discs.

Table 45 — Example of Default Allocations for Format Type = 00h, Format Sub-type = 00b

| BD-R Disc | Allocations | | | |
|---------------------|-------------|--------|-------|--------|
| | Area | Spares | TDMA | Totals |
| 80 mm Single Layer | ISA0 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |
| | OSA0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 80 mm Dual Layer | ISA0 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |
| | OSA0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | OSA1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | ISA1 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |
| 120 mm Single Layer | ISA0 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |
| | OSA0 | 4 096 | 4 096 | 8 192 |
| 120 mm Dual Layer | ISA0 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |
| | OSA0 | 4 096 | 4 096 | 8 192 |
| | OSA1 | 4 096 | 4 096 | 8 192 |
| | ISA1 | 2 048 | 2 048 | 4 096 |

6.3.3.2 Format Type = 00h, BD-RE

Format Type 00h requires that the Drive processes the formatting process by using its default User Data Zone size. The Drive ignores the Number of Blocks field, and the Block Length field. The Format Sub-type field is reserved. The default behavior of the format process is Quick Reformat.

The total User Data Zone on the disc shall be the default size as reported by the Format Type 00h Formattable Capacity descriptor returned by READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

The Spare Area size shall be the default size as resulting from the default User Data Zone Size.

6.3.3.3 Format Type = 01h (Spare Area Expansion on BD-RE)

If the Expand bit is set to one in the Formattable Feature descriptor, Format Type 01h is supported and is used to convert some of the User Data Zone into Spare Area. Spare areas are permitted to be expanded when the total spare area size is non-zero. If the current disc formatting has no spare area allocated, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If the Number of Blocks field does not provide space for additional spare area, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

Only the last spare area may be expanded. On a SL disc, only the OSA0 may be expanded. On a DL disc, only the ISA1 may be expanded.

The Host should determine the location and size of the part of the User Data Zone that it expects to be taken as spares. User Data in that area should be preserved by the Host and all address links to that User Data should be removed.

Although defect status may change, each registered defect within the range of the area taken as spares shall remain a registered defect after the execution of this command.

Once formatting has completed, if space is available, the Host should restore any data that was copied off the disc.

6.3.3.4 Format Type = 30h (Format BD-RE with Spare Areas)

Table 46 shows the Format Descriptor for Format Type 30h.

Table 46 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 30h)

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|--|---|---|---|---|-----------------|---|---|
| Byte | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Format Type = 30h | | | | | Format Sub-type | | |
| 5 | (MSB) Spare Area size in Clusters (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |

Format Sub-type (Table 47) selects a sub-type of Format Type 30h that is independent of the setting of the DCRT bit in the Format List Header.

Table 47 — Format Sub-type Field

| Format Sub-type Value | Description |
|-----------------------|--|
| 00b | Quick Reformat: If the disc is blank, the format process shall simply initialize the disc structures with no certification. If the disc has been previously formatted, a Quick Reformat shall be performed. Quick Reformat consists of declaring that all Clusters marked as defective in the DFL become marked as possibly bad during the reformat. Assigned spares are released. |
| 01b | No Certification: No certification shall be applied to the data area after disc structures have been initialized. The defect tables shall be initialized to indicate no media defects. |
| 10b | Full Certification: The entire data area shall be certified. The defect tables shall be initialized with defects discovered during the certification process. |
| 11b | Quick Certification: If the disc is unformatted, the format process shall simply initialize the disc structures with no certification. If the media has been previously formatted, the defect tables shall be reconstructed by certifying only the Clusters that were previously declared to be defective. |

Format Type 30h requires that the Drive format the disc in order that the User Data Zone contains at least Number of Blocks. The number of spare Clusters allocated shall be less than or equal to:

$$S = \text{IP}[(\text{Data Zone Size} - \text{Number of Blocks})/32], \text{ where IP is the integer part of the result.}$$

Allocation rules for spare areas differ for disc size (i.e. 80mm or 120mm) and number of layers as shown in Table 48.

Table 48 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-RE

| Spare Area | Disc | 80 mm Single Layer | 80 mm Dual Layer | 120 mm Single Layer | 120 mm Dual Layer |
|-------------------|------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| ISA0 ¹ | | 4 096 | 4 096 | 4 096 | 4 096 |
| OSA0 ² | | 0 | 0 | 16 384 | 8 192 |
| OSA1 ² | | - | 0 | - | 8 192 |
| ISA1 ² | | - | 16 384 | - | 16 384 |
| Totals | | 4 096 | 20 480 | 20 480 | 36 864 |

¹The size of ISA0 is fixed at 4 096 Clusters, regardless of size of number of layers.
²The spare area must be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters.

Since the formatted capacity of the media may be larger than the Number of Blocks field, when formatting has completed, the Host should send the READ CAPACITY command in order to determine the actual capacity.

Format Sub-type identifies certification to be performed as described in Table 47. The Spare Area size in Clusters field is ignored by the Drive.

6.3.3.4.1 Spares Allocation on 80 mm Single Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.3.3.4.2 Spares Allocation on 80 mm Dual Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If $S > 4\,096$, then set $S_1 = \min\left(256 \times IP\left[\frac{(S - 4\,096)}{256}\right], 16\,384\right)$. ISA1 shall be allocated S_1 spare Clusters.

6.3.3.4.3 Spares Allocation on 120 mm Single Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If $S > 4\,096$, then set $S_1 = \min\left(256 \times IP\left[\frac{(S - 4\,096)}{256}\right], 16\,384\right)$. OSA0 shall be allocated S_1 spare Clusters.

6.3.3.4.4 Spares Allocation on 120 mm Dual Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

ISA0 shall be allocated 4 096 Clusters.

As one of examples, the OSA0, OSA1, and ISA1 may be allocated such that the size of ISA1 is at least twice the size of OSA0. Thus, when $S > 4\,096$, the example allocations for ISA1, OSA0, and OSA1 are given by the following:

$$\text{SizeofOSA0} = \text{SizeofOSA1} = \text{MIN} \left[256 \times \text{IP} \left(\frac{S - 4\,096}{4 \times 256} \right), 16\,384 \right]$$

and

$$\text{SizeofISA1} = \text{MIN} \left[256 \times \text{IP} \left(\frac{S - 4\,096}{256} \right) - 2 \times \text{SizeofOSA0}, 16\,384 \right]$$

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.3.3.5 Format Type = 31h (Format BD-RE without Spare Areas)

If the RENoSA bit is set to one in the Formattable Feature descriptor, Format Type 31h is supported. Format Type 31h specifies the Drive to process the formatting process with no Spare Area.

Table 49 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 31h)

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|---------------------|---|---|---|---|-----------------|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | User Data Zone Size | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Format Type = 31h | | | | | Format Sub-type | | |
| 5 | (MSB) | Block Length | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |

The User Data Zone Size specifies the total number of user accessible blocks on all layers of the disc. Format Sub-type identifies certification to be performed as described in Table 47.

The Block Length specifies the length in bytes of each sector.

On BD-RE discs, the Drive shall ignore the User Data Zone Size field and the Block Length field.

6.3.3.6 Format Type = 32h (Format BD-R with Spare Areas)

6.3.3.6.1 Overview

Format Type 32h permits formatting a BD-R disc in SRM+POW, SRM-POW, or RRM. When formatted with Format Type 32h, the BD-R disc is required to allocate a non-zero number of spares. Table 50 shows the Format Descriptor for Format Type 32h.

Table 50 — Format Descriptor (Format Type = 32h)

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------------------------------|--|----------|---|---|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) (LSB) Number of Blocks | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Format Type = 32h | | | | Format Sub-type | | | |
| Type Dependent Parameters | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | ISA_V | Reserved | | | Spare Area Distribution Parameter | | | |
| 6 | TDMA_V | Reserved | | | TDMA Distribution Parameter | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |

Number of Blocks contains the minimum number of LBAs that shall be formatted on the disc. Format Sub-type selects a sub-type of format Type 32h.

Table 51 — Format Sub-type Field

| Sub-type Value | Description |
|----------------|-------------|
| 00b | SRM+POW |
| 01b | SRM-POW |
| 10b | RRM |
| 11b | Reserved |

If ISA_V is set to one, the Spare Area Distribution Parameter is valid. If ISA_V is set to zero, a vendor specific default shall be assigned for the numeric value of the Spare Area Distribution Parameter.

The Drive shall interpret Spare Area Distribution Parameter as the integer between 1 and 15 that most nearly satisfies (i.e., Drive shall round the Host supplied value to the appropriate value):

$$\frac{SpareAreaDistributionParameter}{16} = \frac{ISA0size + ISA1size}{TotalSAsize} = \frac{4096 + ISA1size}{S}$$

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

If TDMA_V is set to one, the TDMA Distribution Parameter is valid.

If TDMA_V is set to zero, a vendor specific default shall be assigned for the numeric value of the TDMA Distribution Parameter.

The Drive shall interpret TDMA Distribution Parameter as the nearest integer that satisfies:

$$\frac{TDMADistributionParameter}{16} = \frac{TDMAsize}{TotalSAsize}$$

Consequently,

$$TDMAsize = TotalSAsize \times \frac{TDMADistributionParameter}{16}$$

6.3.3.6.2 Calculating Spare Size

Allocation rules for spare areas differ for disc size (i.e. 80mm or 120mm) and number of layers as shown in [Table 52](#).

Table 52 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-R

| Spare Area | Disc | 80 mm Single Layer | 80 mm Dual Layer | 120 mm Single Layer | 120 mm Dual Layer |
|--|------|--------------------|------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| ISA0 ¹ | | 4 096 | 4 096 | 4 096 | 4 096 |
| OSA0 ² | | 65 536 | 65 536 | 196 608 | 196 608 |
| OSA1 ² | | - | 65 536 | - | 196 608 |
| ISA1 ² | | - | 16 384 | - | 16 384 |
| Max Possible Allocatable Spares | | 69 632 | 151 552 | 200 704 | 413 696 |
| ¹ The size of ISA0 is fixed at 4096 Clusters, regardless of size of number of layers. ² The spare area must be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters. | | | | | |

Format Type 32h requires that the Drive format the disc in order that the User Data Zone contains at least Number of Blocks. The number of spare Clusters allocated shall be at most:

$$S = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{DataZoneSize - NumberOfBlocks}{256 \times 32} \right)$$

where IP is the integer part of the result.

S is a count of Clusters that is an integral multiple of 256.

S shall be at least 4096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If the disc is single layer and $S > 4\,096$, then

$$ISA0size = 4\,096$$

and

$$OSA0size = \text{MIN}[MaxOSA0size, S - 4\,096].$$

If the disc is dual layer and $S > 4\,096$, then

$$ISA0size = 4\,096,$$

$$ISA1size = MIN \left[MaxISA1size, 256 \times IP \left(\frac{\frac{S * SADP}{16} - 4\,096}{256} \right) \right],$$

and

$$OSA0size = OSA1size = MIN \left[MaxOSA0size, 256 \times IP \left(\frac{S - 4\,096 - ISA1size}{2 * 256} \right) \right].$$

6.3.3.6.3 Calculating Additional TDMA Space

Spare area sizes must be determined prior to calculating the TDMA allocations.

Inner Zone TDMA's has a fixed size of 2048 Clusters each. Additional TDMA space is taken from the spare areas. The amount of each spare area that is allocated for TDMA is determined by the TDMA Distribution Parameter.

When the BD-R disc is single layer:

$$TDMA0size = 2048,$$

$$TDMA1Size = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{4\,096 \times TDMADistributionParameter}{16 \times 256} \right), \text{ and}$$

$$TDMA2Size = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{OSA0Size \times TDMADistributionParameter}{16 \times 256} \right).$$

When the BD-R disc is dual layer:

$$TDMA0size = 2\,048,$$

$$TDMA1size = 2\,048,$$

$$TDMA2Size = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{4\,096 \times TDMADistributionParameter}{16 \times 256} \right),$$

$$TDMA3Size = TDMA4size = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{OSA0size \times TDMADistributionParameter}{16 \times 256} \right), \text{ and}$$

$$TDMA5Size = 256 \times IP \left(\frac{ISA1size \times TDMADistributionParameter}{16 \times 256} \right).$$

6.4 GET CONFIGURATION command

The Core and Morphing Features require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.5 GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command

The Core and Morphing Features require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

Drives that support BD shall implement the Operational Change Request/Notification Class, the Media Class, the Device Busy Class, and the Power Management Class.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.6 GET PERFORMANCE command

The GET PERFORMANCE command provides a method for the Initiator to obtain detailed information about the performance of the Drive. The command also provides a means for the Initiator to get current status and events that occurred during Stream recording/playback operation. Performance parameters are reported separately for read and write.

6.6.1 The CDB and its Parameters

6.6.1.1 The CDB

The GET PERFORMANCE CDB is shown in Table 53.

Table 53 — GET PERFORMANCE CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------|---|---|---|---|--|
| 0 | | Operation Code (ACh) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | Data Type | | | | | |
| 2 | (MSB) | Starting LBA | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (LSB) | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | Maximum Number of Descriptors | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | | |
| | (LSB) | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | Type | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | Control | | | | | | | | |

6.6.1.2 Data Type

The Data Type field definition is dependent upon the Type field value.

6.6.1.3 Starting LBA

Use of the Starting LBA field is determined by the contents of the Type field.

6.6.1.4 Maximum Number of Descriptors

The Drive shall not return more performance descriptors than specified by the Maximum Number of Descriptors field. If Maximum Number of Descriptors is zero, then only the descriptor header shall be returned.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.6.1.5 Type

The Type field specifies the type of data requested. Table 54 shows the valid values for Type.

Table 54 — Type Field Definitions

| Type field | Description | Remark |
|------------|------------------------|---|
| 00h | Performance data | Support is mandatory for BD Drives. This Type value is required by the Real-time Streaming Feature. |
| 01h | Unusable Area data | Support is required if the SW bit of Real-time Streaming Feature is supported by the Drive |
| 02h | Defect Status data | Support is required if the TSR Feature is supported by the Drive |
| 03h | Write Speed Descriptor | Support is required if the WSPD bit of Real-time Streaming Feature is supported by the Drive |
| 04h | DBI | Support is optional for BD Drives |
| 05h | DBI Cache Zone | Support is optional for BD Drives |
| 06h – FFh | Reserved | Reserved |

If the Drive does not support the specified value of Type field for the mounted medium, the Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.6.2 Command Execution

6.6.2.1 Overview

The performance response (Table 55) shall contain a Performance header and zero or more Performance descriptors.

Table 55 — Performance response format

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------|-----|---------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 – 7 | | Performance Header | | | | | | | |
| 8 – n | | Performance Descriptor(s) | | | | | | | |

The Performance Header is defined in Table 56.

Table 56 — Performance Header

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|-------|--------|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) Performance Data Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Reserved | | | | | Write | Except | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |

The Performance Data Length field shall specify the amount of result data not including the Performance Data Length. This value is not modified when the allocation length indicated by the Maximum Number of Descriptors is insufficient to return all of the data available.

The values of Write and Except are dependent upon the Type.

6.6.2.2 Performance (Type field = 00h)

The command reports its characteristics of reading/writing performance.

The Data Type Field (Table 57) is a collection of bit fields that specify the form of the returned descriptor.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 57 — Data Type Field Definitions for Type = 00h

| Data Type Bit Fields | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|------------------------|-----------------------------------|---|
| 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| Tolerance | | Write | Except | |
| 00b = Reserved | | 0b = Read Performance | 00b = nominal performance | |
| 01b = Reserved | | | 01b = Entire performance list | |
| 10b = 10%, nominal; 20%, exceptions | | 1b = Write Performance | 10b = performance exceptions only | |
| 11b = Reserved | | | 11b reserved | |

The Starting LBA field in the CDB is valid only when Except = 01b. If Except = 01b, the Starting LBA field shall indicate the starting point for returning performance data. All performance data shall be for Logical Block Addresses greater than or equal to this LBA.

The Write bit (in the Header), when set to zero, shall indicate that the result data is for read performance using the nominal command for the data type. When set to one, shall indicate that the result data is for write performance.

The Except bit (in the Header), when set to zero, shall indicate that the result data is for nominal performance (see Table 58). When set to one, shall indicate that the result data is for exception conditions (Table 59).

Performance Descriptors shall be returned for the current medium. If no media is present, Performance Descriptors for the fastest medium shall be returned.

The Performance Descriptors (Table 58) for nominal performance are intended to give the Initiator an approximation of Drive performance. All numbers are nominal. On CD media, all sectors shall be reported as 2 352 byte sectors. The descriptor includes a Start LBA value, a Start Performance value in increments of 1 000 Bytes/second, an End LBA value, and an End Performance value in increments of 1 000 Bytes/second.

Table 58 — Performance Descriptor – Nominal Performance

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|-------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | | (MSB) | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | | |

The Start LBA field contains the first Logical Block Address of the extent described by this descriptor. The Start Performance field contains the nominal Drive performance at the Start LBA.

The End LBA field contains the last Logical Block Address of the extent described by this descriptor. The End Performance field contains the nominal Drive performance at the End LBA.

Table 59 — Performance Descriptor – Exceptions

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | LBA | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | Time | | | | | | | |
| 5 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |

The LBA field shall indicate that there is a seek delay between (LBA – 1) and LBA.

The Time field shall indicate the expected additional delay between (LBA – 1) and LBA from nominal, in units of tenths of milliseconds (100 microseconds). This seek delay may be due to linear replacement, zone boundaries, or other media dependent Features. The expected additional delay should represent the typical time expected for the type of exception described.

NOTE 1: A block replaced by linear replacement may cause two exceptions to appear in the Exception Descriptor list – one between the non-replaced area and the beginning of the replaced block, and one from the end of the replaced block back to the non-replaced area.

6.6.2.3 Unusable Area Data (Type=01h)

This command reports data to the Host that how the physically unusable areas for stream recording are allocated on the mounted writable media. If the mounted media is not a writable media, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If this command is issued on unformatted BD-RE disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. See Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions for available sense bytes.

The values if the Data Type field in the CDB for Unusable Area data specifies the type of unusable area to be transferred. See Table 60.

Table 60 — Data Type Field Values for Unusable Area data

| Data Type field | Description | LBA | Number of Unusable Physical Blocks |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 00000b | Physical boundary information | Last LBA prior to the unusable area | Reserved |
| 00001b | Slipped Area information | | Number of physical blocks included in the specified unusable area. |
| 00010b | Defective Blocks information | First LBA of the unusable area | |
| Others | Reserved | | |

The Write and Except bits in the Performance Header for Unusable Area data are not used and shall be set to zeros.

The Performance Descriptor for Unusable Area data is defined in Table 61.

All Unusable Area data shall be for LBAs that are greater than or equal to the Starting LBA specified in the CDB. Each Performance Descriptor for Unusable Area data transferred to the Initiator in ascending order.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

On BD-RE media, the number of Clusters identified by a PBA entry with unknown length is treated as one. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detail of the PBA entry.

Table 61 — Performance Descriptor for Unusable Area data

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) LBA (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | (MSB) Number of Unusable Physical Blocks (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |

The LBA field shall specify the first LBA of the unusable area if the Data Type field in the CDB is set to 00010b. The LBA field shall specify the LBA just before the unusable area when the Unusable Area Type field in CDB is set to 00000b or 00001b.

The Number of Unusable Physical Blocks field shall specify number of physical blocks included in the specified unusable area. When the Data Type field in the CDB is set to 00000b, this field is reserved. See Table 60.

6.6.2.4 Defect Status data (Type=02h)

This command reports Defect Status data to the Host that is created by certification on Restricted Overwrite media or by TSR writing. If the mounted media is not a Restricted Overwrite media or if the Drive does not support certification, and if the Drive does not support TSR on the current media, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Data Type field in CDB shall be set to zero.

All Defect Status data shall be for LBAs that are greater than or equal to the Starting LBA specified in the CDB. In the case of TSR, the Host when reading defect information after the Drive reported CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ MEDIUM ERROR/WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07) shall set the Starting LBA in the CDB to the lowest LBA for which the Host knows the data (according the agree error reporting threshold length).

The Write and Except bits in the Performance Header for Defect Status data are not used and shall be set to zeros.

Defect Status Descriptors shall be transferred to the Initiator in ascending order. If the certified areas are non-contiguous and scattered, separate descriptors, to exclude the void areas shall return the Defect Status Descriptor(s).

The Defect Status Data Length field shall specify the amount of data that follows the Defect Status Data Length field. If there is no Defect Status data on the media, Defect Status Data Length field shall be set to 4 and no Defect Status Descriptor shall be transferred.

Table 62 — Defect Status Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------|-----------------|-----------|--------|--------|--------|------------------|--------|--------|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) | Start LBA | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | End LBA | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Blocking Factor | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Reserved | | | | | First Bit Offset | | | |
| 10 | DS #8 | DS #7 | DS #6 | DS #5 | DS #4 | DS #3 | DS #2 | DS #1 | |
| ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... | ... |
| 2 047 | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # | DS # |
| | 16 304 | 16 303 | 16 302 | 16 301 | 16 300 | 16 299 | 16 298 | 16 297 | |

The Start LBA field contains the start Logical Block Address of the certified sector where the following Defect Status (DS #n bits) starts. The returned Logical Block Address shall be the first sector of a Block that contains logical blocks specified by the Blocking Factor field.

The End LBA field contains the end Logical Block Address of the certified sector where the following Defect Status (DS #n bits) ends. The returned Logical Block Address shall be the last sector of a Block that contains logical blocks specified by the Blocking Factor field.

The Blocking Factor field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per DS #n bit. In the case of BD-R and BD-RE, this field shall be set to 32 as an ECC Block.

The First Bit offset field shall indicate the start valid bit number in the byte 10. The lower bits in the byte 10 are invalid. e.g., if First Bit offset field contains 3, bit 3 of byte 10 has the defect status of the block that contains the Logical block specified Start LBA field. From bit 2 to bit 0 are invalid in this case.

DS #n bit contains the certification result of the block #m. When DS #n bit is set to 0, indicates that the block has no defect and is able to read and write the block safely. When DS #n bit is set to 1, indicates that the block has defect and might not be able to read and write the block safely.

6.6.2.5 Write Speed (Type=03h)

This command reports a list of possible Write Speed descriptors. If recordable media is mounted, Drive shall report the list of speeds that are available for the Blocks of the current mounted medium. If no recordable media is mounted, the Drive shall report the most appropriate list of speeds or only the maximum recording speed. Write Speed descriptors shall be reported in descending order of the Write Speed value. If the Drive supports both CLV and CAV on the media, then the Drive shall report all CLV descriptors first. The Initiator may determine a desired write speed descriptor from the result of this command, then set the Write Speed accordingly via the SET STREAMING command. To apply this descriptor to the SET STREAMING command, the Start LBA field is set to 0, the Read Time field and the Write Time field are set to 1000 (1sec).

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 63 — Write Speed Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|-------------|---|---|-----|---|-----|-------|-----|
| 0 | | Reserved | | | WRC | | RDD | Exact | MRW |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | End LBA | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | Read Speed | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | (MSB) | Write Speed | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | | |

The Write Rotation Control (WRC) field specifies the type of the medium Rotation Control. See Table 64.

Table 64 — Write Rotation Control values

| WRC value | Description |
|-----------|----------------------|
| 00b | CLV and non-pure CAV |
| 01b | Pure CAV |
| Others | Reserved |

Media default rotation control is the rotation control defined by the media specification. Media default rotation control is typically:

- a) BD-RE CLV
- b) BD-R CLV

If default rotation control is CAV, this field shall be set to zero.

RDD bit shall be set to zero.

Exact bit of one indicates that the Drive may perform the recording operation specified by Write Speed Descriptor on the whole media mounted. If the Drive is uncertain, this bit shall set to zero.

The MRW bit indicates that this Write Speed Descriptor is suitable for mixture of read and write (e.g. overwrite mode).

The End LBA field shall indicate the medium capacity if a medium is mounted. The value shall be same as the value reported by READ CAPACITY command. If no medium is mounted, the Drive shall report the maximum capacity of the most appropriate media.

The Read Speed field shall indicate the lowest read performance data of all Blocks in kilobytes per second.

The Write Speed field shall indicate the lowest write performance data of all Blocks in kilobytes per second.

NOTE 2: The Write Speed (Type field = 03h) format may not be able show the difference between 6X CLV and 6X-8X ZCLV on DVD-R/+R media. 6X-8X ZCLV may be regarded as 8X CLV. The correct write speed profile and read speed profiles that are selected are shown by Performance (Type field = 00h) format.

6.6.2.6 DBI (Type=04h)

See MMC-4.

6.6.2.7 DBI cache zone (Type=05h)

See MMC-4.

6.7 INQUIRY command

The Core Feature requires that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.8 MECHANISM STATUS command

6.8.1 Introduction

The Mechanism Status command requests that the Drive respond with the current status of the device, including any Changer Mechanism that adheres to this standard. This command is intended to provide information to the Host about the current operational state of the Drive. The Drive takes operational direction from both the Host and the user. Movement of media in/out of the Drive as well as Play operations may be due to external controls or Host commands. This command provides a method that allows the Host to know what has transpired with the changer mechanism.

Table 65 shows the Features associated with this command.

Table 65 — Features Associated with the MECHANISM STATUS command

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Command Requirement ¹ |
|----------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 00h | Removable Medium | Mandatory |
| 01h | Embedded Media Changer | Mandatory |

¹The command requirement is valid only when the Feature is current.

6.8.2 The CDB and its Parameters

6.8.2.1 The CDB

The MECHANISM STATUS CDB is shown in Table 66.

Table 66 — MECHANISM STATUS CDB

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|----------------------|-------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 0 | OPERATION CODE (BDh) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | Allocation Length | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 9 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Control | | | | | | | |

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum length, in bytes, of the Mechanism Status Parameter list that shall be transferred from the Drive to the Host. An Allocation Length field of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.8.3 Command Processing

6.8.3.1 Mechanism Status Parameter List

The Mechanism Status Parameter list returned contains a header followed by zero or more fixed-length Slot Tables. If the Drive does not support the changer commands, then the number of slot tables returned to the Host should be zero.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 67 — Mechanism Status Parameter List Format

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------|-----|-------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 - 7 | | Mechanism Status Header | | | | | | | |
| 8 - n | | Slot Tables | | | | | | | |

The Mechanism Status Header format is shown in Table 68.

Table 68 — Mechanism Status Header

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|-----------------------------------|---------------|---|---------------------------------|----------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| 0 | | Fault | Changer State | | Current Slot (Low order 5 bits) | | | | |
| 1 | | Mechanism State | | | Door open | Reserved | Current Slot (High order 3 bits) | | |
| 2 | | (MSB) Current LBA (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | (MSB) Length of Slot Tables (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |

The Fault bit indicates that the changer failed to complete the operation reported in the Changer State field.

The Changer State field (Table 69) indicates the current state of the changer.

Table 69 — Changer State Field

| Feature Number | Feature Name |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 0h | Ready |
| 1h | Load in Progress |
| 2h | Unload in Progress |
| 3h | Initializing |

The Current Slot field (an 8-bit field) indicates the Current Slot selected. Changers compatible with a bootable device specification should always initialize (Load) Slot zero on power-on reset or hard reset. This value shall only be changed when a LOAD/UNLOAD command is processed. Operations initiated by a user shall not cause this value to change. If the Drive is not a changer, then this field is reserved. The Mechanism State field (Table 70) encodes the current operation of mechanism.

Table 70 — Mechanism State Field

| Mechanism State | Definition |
|-----------------|--|
| 0h | Idle |
| 1h | Playing (Audio or Data) |
| 2h | Scanning |
| 3h | Active with Host, Composite or Other Ports in use (i.e., READ) |
| 4h-6h | Reserved |
| 7h | No State Information Available |

The Slot Table response data format is defined in Table 71. Each slot shall respond with the status defined.

The Door open bit, when set to one, indicates that the Door(s) or Tray(s) is open or the magazine is not present. If the Drive does not have either a tray or a door, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Current LBA value returns the location that was last used while reading or playing. Once a Read or Play operation has been completed the value of this field may be undefined. While a Read or Play is in progress this field shall contain the LBA of the current block being processed. On BD media, the Current LBA field shall be set to zero.

The Number of Slots Available field indicates the number of slots available. The maximum number of slots is 255.

The Length of Slot Tables field specifies the length in bytes of the all the slot information that follows (e.g. for a 2 slot Drive this value is 8). The Slot Table format is shown in Table 71.

Table 71 — Slot Table Format

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|--------------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|--------|
| 0 | Disc Present | Reserved | Reserved | Reserved | Reserved | Reserved | Reserved | Reserved | Change |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | CWP_V | CWP |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |

The Disc Present bit indicates that there is a Disc in this slot. The reporting of this information is optional after a reset or Disc change. If this capability is not supported, the bit shall be set to one after a reset condition or when a medium has been changed. When the Drive is given a load command for a slot that contains no Disc, the bit corresponding to that slot shall then contain a zero for any following response.

The Change bit indicates that the Disc in that slot has been changed since the last time the disc was loaded. The Change bit is mandatory.

CWP_V, if set to one, indicates that the Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) of the Cartridge in that slot has been checked and CWP bit is valid. If CWP_V is zero, the CWP bit is invalid.

CWP, if set to 1, indicates that the CWP status is active on the Cartridge. If CWP_V is set to 0, CWP bit is invalid and shall be set to zero.

6.8.4 Timeouts

The MECHANISM STATUS command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.8.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the MECHANISM STATUS command is defined in Table 72.

Table 72 — Recommended errors for Mechanism Status command

| Error | Reference |
|---|-----------|
| Unit Attention conditions | Idle |
| CDB or parameter list validation errors | |

6.9 MODE SELECT (10) command

The Core Feature and all other Features that specify mode page support require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.10 MODE SENSE (10) command

The Core Feature and all other Features that specify mode page support require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.11 PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command

The Removable Medium and Morphing Features requires that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Removable Medium Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.12 READ (10) command

The Random Readable and BD Read Features require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes those Features. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.13 READ (12) command

The BD Read and Real-time Streaming Features require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes those Features. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.14 READ BUFFER CAPACITY command

The Real-time Streaming Feature requires that this command be implemented. Each BD-R Profile includes the Real-time Streaming Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from the Drive.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.15 READ CAPACITY command

The READ CAPACITY command provides a means for the Host to request information regarding the capacity of media currently loaded into the Drive. This capacity is reported with respect to reading operations. For capacity associated with writing operations, see 6.18, READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

6.15.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.15.1.1 The CDB

The READ CAPACITY CDB is shown in Table 73.

Table 73 — READ CAPACITY CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|--------|--|
| 0 | | OPERATION CODE (25h) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | | RelAdr | |
| 2 | (MSB) | Logical Block Address = 0000 0000h | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Reserved | | | | | | | PMI=0 | |
| 9 | | Control | | | | | | | | |

6.15.1.2 RelAdr

The RelAdr field is obsolete and shall be set to zero.

6.15.1.3 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero.

6.15.1.4 PMI

The PMI field is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero.

6.15.2 Command Execution

The Drive shall respond to this command by returning eight bytes of READ CAPACITY response data. The format of response data is shown in Table 74.

Table 74 — READ CAPACITY Response Data

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|-------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|--|
| 0 | (MSB) | Logical Block Address | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) | Block Length in Bytes = 0800h | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

The returned Logical Block Address is dependent upon media and format type according to Table 75. The Block Length field indicates the length of Logical Block in bytes. This value shall be 2 048 for CD, DVD, BD media.

Table 75 — READ CAPACITY LBA

| BD Disc | Format | READ CAPACITY LBA |
|----------------|---|--|
| BD-RE | Unformatted | The command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to either MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED |
| | Formatted | The DDS contains a field named: Last LSN of User Data Zone. The content of that field is the READ CAPACITY LBA. |
| BD-R | Blank or SRM-POW without complete session | The LBA reported is 00000000h |
| | SRM-POW with complete session(s) | The LBA of the last addressable user data block in the last Logical Track of the last complete session. |
| | RRM and SRM+POW | LBA of the last sector of the last Cluster in the User Data Zone. The (T)DDS contains a field named: Last LSN of User Data Zone. The content of that field is the READ CAPACITY LBA. |

6.16 READ DISC INFORMATION command

The READ DISC INFORMATION command allows the Host to request information about the currently mounted MM disc.

When this command is required by an implemented Feature and media is present and ready, the command shall always function, even if that Feature's Current bit becomes zero.

6.16.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ DISC INFORMATION CDB is shown in Table 76.

Table 76 — READ DISC INFORMATION CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---|-----------|---|-------|---|
| 0 | | Operation Code (51h) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | Data Type | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (MSB) | Allocation Length | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | Control Byte | | | | | | | |

6.16.1.1 Data Type

When BD-R disc is present, Data Type defines the specific information requested. Defined data types are shown in Table 77.

Table 77 — Disc Information Data Types

| Data Type | Returned Data |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 000b | Standard Disc Information |
| 001b | Track Resources |
| 010b | POW Resources |
| 011b - 111b | Reserved |

If Data Type is not zero and the currently mounted disc is not BD-R, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If Data Type is 010b and the currently mounted disc is not formatted as SRM+POW, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.16.1.2 Allocation Length

The number of Disc Information bytes returned is limited by the Allocation Length parameter of the CDB. An Allocation Length of zero shall not be considered an error. If the Allocation Length is greater than the amount of available Disc Information Data, only the available data is transferred.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.16.2 Command Execution

6.16.2.1 Standard Disc Information

The Drive shall gather information about the medium, format it as shown in Table 78, and transfer to the Host, limited by the Allocation Length.

Table 78 — Standard Disc Information Block

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|---|-------|--------|-----------------------|------|-------------|------------------|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Information Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Disc Information Data Type = 000b | | Erased | State of last Session | | Disc Status | | |
| 3 | Number of First Track on Disc | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Number of Sessions (Least Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | First Track Number in Last Session (Least Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Last Track Number in Last Session (Least Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 7 | DID_V | DBC_V | URU | DAC_V | Resv | DBit | BG Format Status | |
| 8 | Disc Type | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Number of Sessions (Most Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 10 | First Track Number in Last Session (Most Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Last Track Number in Last Session (Most Significant Byte) | | | | | | | |
| 12 | (MSB) Disc Identification (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | (MSB) Last Session Lead-in Start Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | (MSB) Last Possible Lead-out Start Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 21 | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | | | | | | | | |
| 23 | | | | | | | | |
| 24 | (MSB) Disc Bar Code (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| 31 | | | | | | | | |
| 32 | | | | | | | | |
| 33 | Number of OPC Tables | | | | | | | |
| 34 - n | OPC Table Entries | | | | | | | |

Table 79 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is a BD-ROM.

Table 79 — DIB of BD-ROM Discs

| DIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---|
| Erasable | ROM = 0b | BD-ROM is not recordable. |
| State of Last Session | Complete=11b | BD-ROM is always complete. |
| Disc Status | Finalized=10b | BD-ROM is always finalized. |
| Number of First Track on Disc | 0001h | BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| Number of Sessions | 0001h | BD-ROM has exactly 1 session. |
| First Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| Last Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| DID_V | 0b | BD-ROM does not have a Disc ID |
| DBC_V | 0b | BD-ROM does not have a disc bar code |
| URU | 1b | BD-ROM disc is unrestricted use |
| DAC_V | 0b | BD-ROM does not have an Application Code. |
| Dbit | 0b | BD-ROM is not Formattable |
| BG Status | 00b | BD-ROM is not Formattable |
| Disc Type | 00h | BD has no CD equivalent type. |
| Disc Identification | 00000000h | BD has no CD equivalent type. |
| Last Session Lead-in Start Address | 00000000h | BD-ROM is not recordable |
| Last Possible Lead-out Start Address | 00000000h | BD-ROM is not recordable |
| Disc Bar Code | All zeros | BD does not have a disc bar code |
| Disc Application Code | 00h | BD does not have an Application Code. |
| Number of OPC Table entries | 0 | BD-ROM is not recordable |
| OPC Table | None | BD-ROM is not recordable |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 80 — DIB of BD-RE Discs

| DIB Field | BD-RE | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| | Value | Meaning |
| Erasable | RE = 1b | RE is rewritable. |
| State of Last Session | Empty = 00b Complete=11b | The last session of an unformatted RE is always empty. The last session of a formatted RE is always complete. |
| Disc Status | Blank = 00b Finalized=10b | An unformatted RE is empty. A formatted RE is always finalized. |
| Number of First Track on Disc | 0001h | Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| Number of Sessions | 0001h | Formatted RE has exactly 1 session. |
| First Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| Last Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track. |
| DID_V | 0b | BD does not have a Disc ID |
| DBC_V | 0b | BD does not have a disc bar code |
| URU | 1b | BD disc is unrestricted use |
| DAC_V | 0b | BD does not have an Application Code. |
| Dbit | 0b | RE always formats in foreground. |
| BG Status | 00b | RE always formats in foreground. |
| Disc Type | 00h | BD has no CD equivalent type. |
| Disc Identification | 00000000h | BD has no CD equivalent type. |
| Last Session Lead-in Start Address | 00000000h | RE is single session. |
| Last Possible Lead-out Start Address | 00000000h | BD does not use this field. |
| Disc Bar Code | All zeros | BD does not have a disc bar code |
| Disc Application Code | 00h | BD does not have an Application Code. |
| Number of OPC Table entries | 0 | RE Drives do not provide OPC info. |
| OPC Table | None | RE Drives do not provide OPC info. |

Table 81 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is a blank BD-R.

Table 81 — DIB of a Blank BD-R Disc

| DIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Erasable | 0b | R is not rewritable. |
| State of Last Session | Empty=00b | Empty Session |
| Disc Status | Empty=00b | Empty Disc |
| Number of First Track on Disc | 0001h | A blank disc is assumed to be SRM |
| Number of Sessions | 0001h | A blank disc is assumed to be SRM |
| First Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | A blank disc is assumed to be SRM |
| Last Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | A blank disc is assumed to be SRM |
| DID_V | 0b | BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID |
| DBC_V | 0b | BD does not have a bar codes |
| URU | 1b | BD-R is an unrestricted use disc |
| DAC_V | 0b | BD has no defined application code |
| Dbit | 0b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| BG Status | 00b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| Disc Type | 00h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Disc Identification | 00000000h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Last Session Lead-in Start Address | 00000000h | BD-R SRM has no session Lead-ins |
| Last Possible Lead-out Start Address | 00000000h | BD does not use this field. |
| Disc Bar Code | All zeros | BD does not have bar codes |
| Disc Application Code | 00h | BD has no defined application code |
| Number of OPC Table entries | 00h | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |
| OPC Table | None | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 82 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is BD-R formatted in SRM-POW or SRM+POW.

Table 82 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM-POW or SRM+POW

| DIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Erasable | 0b | R is not rewritable. |
| State of Last Session | xxb | according to MMC-4. |
| Disc Status | 01b | Incomplete disc until disc is closed. |
| Number of First Track on Disc | 0001h | BD-R requires first Logical Track be numbered 1 |
| Number of Sessions | S | Number of sessions indicated in SRRI. |
| First Track Number in Last Session | TLS1 | Definition is unchanged from CD |
| Last Track Number in Last Session | TLSL | Definition is unchanged from CD |
| DID_V | 0b | BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID |
| DBC_V | 0b | BD does not have a bar codes |
| URU | 1b | BD-R is an unrestricted use disc |
| DAC_V | 0b | BD has no defined application code |
| Dbit | 0b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| BG Status | 00b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| Disc Type | 00h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Disc Identification | 00000000h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Last Session Lead-in Start Address | 00000000h | BD-R SRM has no session Lead-ins |
| Last Possible Lead-out Start Address | 00000000h | BD does not use this field. |
| Disc Bar Code | All zeros | BD does not have bar codes |
| Disc Application Code | 00h | BD has no defined application code |
| Number of OPC Table entries | 00h | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |
| OPC Table | None | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |

Table 83 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is BD-R formatted in RRM.

Table 83 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM

| DIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|---|
| Erasable | 0b | R is not rewritable. |
| State of Last Session | 11b | RRM disc is considered as a complete session |
| Disc Status | 11b | RRM supports only random access writing and is not recordable serially in multiple sessions |
| Number of First Track on Disc | 0001h | RRM is not subdivided into tracks |
| Number of Sessions | 0001h | RRM is not subdivided into sessions |
| First Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | RRM is not subdivided into tracks |
| Last Track Number in Last Session | 0001h | RRM is not subdivided into tracks |
| DID_V | 0b | BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID |
| DBC_V | 0b | BD does not have a bar codes |
| URU | 1b | BD-R is an unrestricted use disc |
| DAC_V | 0b | BD has no defined application code |
| Dbit | 0b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| BG Status | 00b | BD-R is always formatted in foreground |
| Disc Type | 00h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Disc Identification | 00000000h | BD has no CD equivalent type |
| Last Session Lead-in Start Address | 00000000h | BD-R RRM has no session Lead-ins |
| Last Possible Lead-out Start Address | 00000000h | BD does not use this field. |
| Disc Bar Code | All zeros | BD does not have bar codes |
| Disc Application Code | 00h | BD has no defined application code |
| Number of OPC Table entries | 00h | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |
| OPC Table | None | BD-R Drives do not report OPC information |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.16.2.2 Format of Track Resources Disc Information

The format of the Track Resources Disc Information is shown in Table 84.

Table 84 — Track Resources Disc Information Block

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|--|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Information Length = 10 (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Disc Information Data Type = 001b | | | | Reserved | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) Maximum possible number of the Tracks on the disc (1EF7h) (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | (MSB) Number of the assigned Tracks on the disc (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks on the disc (0010h) (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | (MSB) Current number of appendable Tracks on the disc (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | |

The Disc Information Length specifies the number of bytes that follow the Disc Information Length. For data type 001b, the Disc Information Length is 10.

On BD-R, the Maximum possible number of the Tracks on the disc is fixed at 7 927.

On BD-R, Number of the assigned Tracks on the disc is the number of active entries in the SRRI.

On BD-R, Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks on the disc is 16.

On BD-R, Current number of appendable Tracks on the disc is the currently number of open Logical Tracks.

6.16.2.3 Format of POW Resources Disc Information

The format of the POW Resources Disc Information is shown in Table 85.

Table 85 — POW Resources Disc Information Block

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|--|---|---|---|----------|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Information Length = 14 (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Disc Information Data Type = 010b | | | | Reserved | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) Remaining POW Replacements (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) Remaining POW Reallocation Map Entries (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | (MSB) Number of Remaining POW Updates (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | |

The Disc Information Length specifies the number of bytes that follow the Disc Information Length. For data type 010b, the Disc Information Length is 14.

On BD-R, the Remaining POW Replacements is the sum of all the Free Blocks fields of all the Track Information Blocks (See 6.20, READ TRACK INFORMATION command) divided by Cluster size in Logical Blocks (32). This is the number of potential POWs that may be performed.

On BD-R, Remaining POW Reallocation Map Entries is the number of unused entries in the TDFL.

On BD-R, Number of Remaining POW Updates is the number of unused Clusters in the TDMAs.

6.17 READ DISC STRUCTURE command

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command requests that the Drive transfer to the Host information about the currently mounted disc.

6.17.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB is shown in Table 86.

Table 86 — READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---|------------|---|---|---|
| 0 | | Operation Code (ADh) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | Media Type | | | |
| 2 | (MSB) | Address | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Layer Number | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Format Code | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | Allocation Length | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | Control | | | | | | | |

6.17.1.1 Media Type

The Media Type field identifies the Media Type to which this command is directed. The BD disc type is 0001b. The Media Type for all other media is 0000b.

6.17.1.2 Address

Use and definition of the Address field is dependent upon the Format Code.

6.17.1.3 Layer Number

Use and definition of the Layer Number field is dependent upon the Format field value.

6.17.1.4 Format Code when Media Type = 0001b

The Format Code (Table 87) indicates the type of information that is requested by the Host.

Table 87 — Format Code Definitions

| Format Code | Structure | Address | Layer Number | Description |
|-------------|-------------------------|----------------------|--------------|---|
| 00h | DI | - | - | Disc Information from PIC in Embossed area <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Address field is reserved • Layer field is reserved |
| 01h — 07h | Reserved | - | - | - |
| 08h | DDS | - | - | Disc Definition Structure |
| 09h | Cartridge Status | - | - | Cartridge status. |
| 0Ah | Spare Area Information | - | - | Status of Spare Areas |
| 0Bh - 11h | Reserved | - | - | - |
| 12h | Raw DFL | Offset | - | Unmodified DFL |
| 13h — 2Fh | Reserved | - | - | - |
| 30h | PAC | ID and Format Number | - | Physical Access Control Structure |
| 31h — BFh | Reserved | - | - | - |
| C0h | Write Protection Status | - | - | Generic Write Protection status |
| C1h — FEh | Reserved | - | - | - |
| FFh | Structure List | - | - | BD Structure list |

6.17.1.5 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that may be returned by the Drive. An Allocation Length of zero shall not be considered an error.

6.17.2 Command Execution

6.17.2.1 General

If the READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB validation permits execution of the command, the Drive shall collect the request information and return it to the Host according to the general formatting shown in Table 88.

Table 88 — BD Structure Returned Data Format

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length = N+2 | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Disc Structure Data | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Returned Data | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.2 Format Code 00h: Disc Information (DI)

Disc Information and Emergency Brake data shall be read from the PIC zone. DI units that contain physical information shall be returned. Emergency Brake data shall be returned. If any data can be returned, 4 100 bytes shall be returned. The Disc Information structure format is shown in Table 89.

Table 89 — BD Structure Format Code 00h: Disc Information

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------------------|-------|------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Disc Structure Data Length = 4 098 | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Disc Information | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Disc Information Data | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 095 | | | | | | | | | |

The format of the Disc Information Data is shown in Table 90.

Table 90 — Disc Information Data Format

| Fields | BD-ROM Field Size | BD-R/RE Field Size |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Disc Information (DI) Units | 2 048 | 3 584 |
| Emergency Brake (EB) Data | 2 048 | 512 |

The general format of a DI unit is shown in Table 91.

Table 91 — General DI Unit Format

| | DI Unit on ROM | | DI Unit on R/RE | | Field |
|---------|----------------|------|-----------------|------|---|
| | Offset | Size | Offset | Size | |
| Header | 0 | 2 | 0 | 2 | Disc Information Identifier "DI" |
| | 2 | 1 | 2 | 1 | Disc Information Format |
| | 3 | 1 | 3 | 1 | Number of DI units in each DI block/ Number of the Layers to which this DI unit applies |
| | 4 | 1 | 4 | 1 | Disc type specific: - Reserved (each byte set to 00h) for BD-R/ROM - Legacy Information for BD-RE |
| | 5 | 1 | 5 | 1 | DI unit Sequence Number/ Continuation flag |
| | 6 | 1 | 6 | 1 | Number of bytes in use in this DI unit |
| | 7 | 1 | 7 | 1 | Reserved (each byte set to 00h) |
| Body | 8 | 3 | 8 | 3 | Disc Type Identifier = "BDO" for BD-ROM, "BDW" for BD-RE, "BDR" for BD-R |
| | 11 | 1 | 11 | 1 | Disc Size/Class/Version |
| | 12 | 52 | 12 | 88 | DI Unit Format dependent contents |
| Trailer | - | - | 100 | 6 | Disc Manufacturer ID |
| | - | - | 106 | 3 | Media Type ID |
| | - | - | 109 | 2 | Time Stamp |
| | - | - | 111 | 1 | Product Revision Number |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

The DI Unit Format dependent contents are disc specific. For detailed definition of the BD-ROM DI unit, see *System Description Blu-ray Disc Read-only Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications*. For detailed definition of the BD-R DI unit, see *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications*. For detailed definition of the BD-RE DI unit, see *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications*.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.3 Format Code 08h: Disc Definition Structure (DDS)

The DDS is a disc management structure that contains basic disc usage parameters for BD-R and BD-RE. The minimum defined size for the DDS is 60 bytes. The DDS definition is permitted to expand to 2 048 bytes.

There is no DDS defined for BD-ROM. If the DDS is requested for any disc that has no DDS defined, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

On BD-RE, the DDS is written into the DMA zones. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the DDS. When this command is issued on unformatted BD-RE disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. See Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions for available sense bytes.

On BD-R, the DDS is written only when the disc is finalized. Prior to finalization, the DDS is represented by the TDDS that is recorded in a TDMA. If the disc is not finalized, the structure returned shall be the most recent version found in the current TDMA. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the DDS on BD-R.

On both BD-R and BD-RE discs, there are four DMA zones in different locations on a disc and the DDS stored in each DMA zone has same contents except the First PSN of Defect List field. See Table 93. A Drive returns either one of DDSs.

The DDS structure format is shown in Table 92.

Table 92 — BD Structure Format Code 08h: Disc Definition Structure

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------------------------------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Disc Definition Structure | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | DDS Data | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

The general format of the DDS is shown in Table 93.

Table 93 — Format of the DDS

| Byte Offset | Field | Number of Bytes | Byte Offset | Field | Number of Bytes |
|-------------|----------------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|-----------------|
| 0 | (T)DDS Identifier "DS" | 2 | 44 | OSA size | 4 |
| 2 | DDS format | 1 | 48 | ISA1 size | 4 |
| 3 | Reserved | 1 | 52 | Spare Area full flags | 1 |
| 4 | DDS Update Count | 4 | 53 | Reserved | 1 |
| 8 | Reserved | 8 | 54 | Disc Type specific field | 1 |
| 16 | First PSN of Drive Area | 4 | 55 | Reserved | 1 |
| 20 | Reserved | 4 | 56 | Disc Type specific field | 4 |
| 24 | First PSN of Defect List | 4 | 60 | Reserved | 4 |
| 28 | Reserved | 4 | 64 | Status bits of INFO1/2 and PAC1/2 on L0 and L1 | 32 |
| 32 | PSN of LSN 0 of user area | 4 | 96 | Disc Type specific data | ... |
| 36 | Last LSN of user data area | 4 | | | |
| 40 | ISA0 size | 4 | | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.4 Format Code 09h: Cartridge Status

The Medium Status structure (Table 94) includes information about cartridge status.

Table 94 — BD Format Structure Code 09h: Cartridge Status

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|--------------------------------|-------|--------------------------------|-----|----------|---|---|-----|-------|----------|--|
| 0 | (MSB) | Disc Structure Data Length = 6 | | | | | | (LSB) | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| Medium Status Structure | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Cartridge | OUT | Reserved | | | CWP | PWP | Reserved | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |

The Cartridge bit of one indicates that a medium is in a cartridge. The Cartridge bit of zero indicates that a medium is not in a cartridge.

The Out bit of one indicates that a medium has been taken out from a cartridge or a medium is put into a cartridge. The Out bit of zero indicates that a medium has not been taken out from a cartridge. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the Out bit shall be set to zero.

The Persistent Write Protection (PWP) bit of one indicates that the medium surface is set to write protected status. The PWP bit of zero indicates that the media surface is set to write permitted status.

The Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) bit of one indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write protected state. The CWP bit of zero indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write permitted state. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the CWP bit shall be set to zero.

6.17.2.5 Format Code 0Ah: Spare Area Information

The Spare Area Information structure contains status information about the defect management systems spare blocks on BD-R and BD-RE discs. When this command is issued on unformatted BD-RE disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. See Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions for available sense bytes.

The format of the Spare Area Information structure is shown in Table 95.

Table 95 — Format Code 0Ah: Spare Area Information

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length = 000Eh | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Spare Area Information | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Reserved | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 4 | (MSB) Number of Free Spare Blocks | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 8 | (MSB) Number of Allocated Spare Blocks | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | (LSB) |

Number of free Spare blocks field is the number of unused spare blocks that are not considered defective in the Spare Areas. In the case of BD-R/RE, this number is an integral multiple of 32.

Number of Allocated Spare blocks is the number of spare blocks reserved on the disc for defective block replacements. In the case of BD-R/RE, this number is an integral multiple of 32. If the disc is BD-R formatted as SRM, this value does not include any part of the spare areas that have been allocated as TDMAs.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.6 Format Code 12h: Raw Defect List (DFL)

The DFL is a defect management structure on BD-R and BD-RE discs that identifies the locations and status of known defective Clusters on the disc. There is no DFL defined for BD-ROM. If the DFL is requested for any disc that has no DFL defined, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. When this command is issued on unformatted BD-RE disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. See Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions for available sense bytes.

The DFL is a defect management structure that identifies the locations and status of known defective Clusters on the disc. The length of the DFL is variable. The minimum defined size is 72 bytes. The DFL may occupy as many as 8 Clusters (524 288 bytes). The actual length of the DFL is recorded in the DFL header.

On BD-R, the DFL is written only when the disc is finalized. Prior to finalization, the DFL is represented by the TDFL that is recorded in a TDMA. If the disc is not finalized, the structure returned shall be the most recent version found in the current TDMA.

The DFL is viewed as being contained within 16 packages (numbered from 0 through 15), each 32K (32 768) bytes in length. The 64-byte DFL header appears only in package 0. The Address field in the CDB is used to address a specific package. If the Address field value is larger than 15, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. It is only possible to read a single package with one command. In order to read the entire DFL it is necessary to read all of the DFL packages.

The DFL structure format is shown in Table 96.

Table 96 — BD Structure Format Code 12h: Defect List

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Number of Packages in DFL | | | | | | | |
| Defect List Structure | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | DFL Data from addressed package | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | |

The Host is required to read packages 0 through "Number of Packages in DFL" - 1 in order to receive all of the DFL.

The Data Structure Length is the number of bytes that follow the Data Structure Length field. The maximum value for this field is 32770 (a complete package + 2). If Data Structure Length = 0002h, the addressed DFL package is empty.

The general DFL format is shown in Table 97.

Table 97 — General DFL Format

| Field Offset | Contents | Field Size |
|--------------|-----------------------------------|------------|
| 0 | DFL Identifier "DL" | 2 |
| 2 | DFL format | 1 |
| 3 | Reserved | 1 |
| 4 | DFL Update Count | 4 |
| 8 | Reserved | 4 |
| 12 | Number of DFL Entries | 4 |
| 16 | Disc Type Specific information | 48 |
| 64 | Defect Entries - eight bytes each | ... |

See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the DFL on BD-R. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the DFL on BD-RE.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.7 Format Code 30h: Physical Access Control (PAC)

6.17.2.7.1 General

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are provided as structures on the disc to include additional information for interchange between interchange parties. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area. Backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area. When this command is issued on unformatted BD-RE disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. See Table 3 — BD-RE READY Conditions for available sense bytes.

The format for all PACs is shown in Table 4.

The specific PAC ID and format number of the PAC addressed by the READ DISC STRUCTURE command is contained the Address field of the CDB as shown in Table 98.

Table 98 — PAC ID and Format Number in CDB Address Field

| Byte | Field |
|------|--------------------|
| 2 | (MSB) PAC ID (LSB) |
| 3 | |
| 4 | |
| 5 | Format Number |

Valid values for the PAC ID and Format Number fields are shown in Table 99.

Table 99 — PAC ID and Format Number Fields

| PAC | | Definition |
|-------------------|-----------|---|
| ID | Format | |
| 000000h | 00h | Return a list of PAC headers of all PACs that are written on the currently mounted disc. The list shall be given in ascending order according to PAC ID. |
| | 01h - FFh | Reserved |
| 000001h - FFFFFEh | 00h - FFh | The PAC information of the addressed PAC shall be returned. |
| FFFFFFh | 00h - FEh | Reserved |
| | FFh | Return a list of PAC ID and Format of all PACs that are known to the Drive for the currently mounted disc type. The list shall be given in ascending order according to PAC ID. |

In the case that the PAC ID and Format Number requested are both zero, the Drive shall return a list of the headers of all PACs that are written on the currently mounted disc. The PAC headers shall be ordered according to PAC ID.

Table 100 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID/Format = 000000h/00h

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------------------------|-------|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Disc Structure Data Length = $384*N+2$ | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| PAC Header List | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Header of first written PAC | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 383 | | | | | | | | | |
| 384 | | ... | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 384*(N-1) | | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | Header of Nth written PAC | | | | | | | |
| 384*N-1 | | | | | | | | | |

In the case that the PAC ID/Format Number requested is neither 000000h/00h nor FFFFFFFh/FFh, the Drive shall return the most recently recorded copy of the requested PAC. If reading the PAC is not permitted, then only the PAC header shall be returned. If there is no PAC with the specified ID and Format Number, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The format of returned PAC data is shown in Table 101.

Table 101 — Returned Data Format for $000001h \leq \text{PAC ID} \leq \text{FFFFFFh}$

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------------|-------|----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Disc Structure Data Length | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| PAC | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | PAC Header | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 383 | | | | | | | | | |
| 384 | | PAC Specific Information | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | | |

The length of a PAC is at most 63488 bytes (31 logical blocks).

In the case that the PAC ID requested is FFFFFFFh, the Drive shall return a list of the PAC IDs of all PACs that are known to the Drive. The list shall be ordered according to PAC ID in ascending order.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 102 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID = FFFFFFFFh

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------------------------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length = $4*N+2$ (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| PAC ID and Format List | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | PAC ID and Format of known PAC #1 | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | ... | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| $4*N-4$ | | PAC ID and Format of known PAC #N | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| $4*N-1$ | | | | | | | | | |

6.17.2.7.2 Primary PAC

The Primary PAC (PAC ID = 50524Dh ("PRM"), PAC Format = 00h) shall be included on each BD-ROM and BD-RE. The Primary PAC is not defined for BD-R.

See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Read-only Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-ROM. See *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1 Basic Format Specifications* for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-RE.

The format of the Primary PAC structure is shown in Table 103.

Table 103 — Primary PAC

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------------------|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length = N+2 (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Primary PAC Data | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | PAC Data | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | |

The maximum value for N is 404 on BD-ROM and 32 768 on BD-RE.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.7.3 Disc Write Protect PAC

The Disc Write Protect (DWP) PAC Cluster is used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password can be included. Recognition and reading the DWP PAC is mandatory.

The format of the Disc Write Protect PAC structure is shown in Table 104.

Table 104 — DWP PAC

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---------------------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) Disc Structure Data Length = 430 (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| DWP PAC Data | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | DWP PAC Header | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 383 | | | | | | | | | |
| 384 | | Known PAC Entire_Disc_Flags | | | | | | | |
| 385 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 386 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 387 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 388 | | Write Protect Control Byte (see Table 5) | | | | | | | |
| 389 - 395 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 396 - 427 | | Write Protect Password | | | | | | | |

The Write Protect Password field is zero filled prior to transfer of this structure.

The length of a DWP PAC is 428 bytes.

6.17.2.8 Format Code C0h: Write Protection Status

The Write protection status is returned in the format as shown in Table 105.

Table 105 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = C0h)

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|--------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------|---|---|------|-----|-----|-------|---|
| 0 | (MSB) | Disc Structure Data Length = 6 | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| Write Protection Status | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Reserved | | | | MSWI | CWP | PWP | SWPP | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following DISC STRUCTURE data that is available to be transferred to the Host. The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length value does not include the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field itself.

The Software Write Protection until Power down (SWPP) bit of one indicates that the software write protection is active. The SWPP bit of zero indicates that the software write protection is inactive. If the Drive does not support SWPP, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Persistent Write Protection (PWP) bit of one indicates that the media surface is set to write protected status. The PWP bit of zero indicates that the media surface is set to write permitted status. If Write Inhibit is implemented via a WDCB, then any write inhibit action specified in the WDCB shall result in PWP set to one.

If Write Inhibit is implemented via a DWP PAC, then any write inhibit action specified in the DWP PAC shall result in PWP set to one. When a Write Inhibit by the DWP PAC is temporarily disabled by the VWE bit the PWP bit should be set to zero.

If Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) is set to one, the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write protected state. If CWP bit is set to zero, the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write permitted state. If there is no cartridge or if the cartridge has no CWP function, CWP shall be set to zero.

The Media Specific Write Inhibition (MSWI) bit of one indicates that any writing is inhibited by some media specific condition. The MSWI bit of zero indicates that writing is not inhibited by the media specific reason.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.17.2.9 Format Code FFh: BD Structure List

The BD Structure List is returned in the format as shown in Table 106.

Table 106 — BD Structure Format Code FFh: BD Structure List

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|--------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | (MSB) Data Structure Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| BD Structure List | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Structure List | | | | | | | |
| - | | | | | | | | | |
| n | | | | | | | | | |

The Data Structure Length specifies the length in bytes of the following BD STRUCTURE data that is available to be transferred to the Host. The Data Structure Length value does not include the Data Structure Length field itself.

The Structure List is returned as a sequence of Structure List Entries as shown in Table 107.

Note: This BD Structure is generated by the Drive rather than read from the medium. Consequently, this structure shall be returned regardless of media presence.

Table 107 — Structure List Entry

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|------------------------------|-----|----------|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | Format Code | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | SDS | RDS | Reserved | | | | | |
| 2 | | (MSB) Structure Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |

The Format Code field shall identify a BD Structure that is readable/writable via the READ/SEND DISC STRUCTURE commands.

The SDS bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the BD structure is not writable via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command. When set to one, shall indicate that the BD structure is writable via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command.

The RDS bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the BD structure is not readable via the READ DISC STRUCTURE command. When set to one, shall indicate that the BD structure is readable via the READ DISC STRUCTURE command.

The Structure Length field shall specify the length of the BD Structure that is identified by the Format Code.

6.18 READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command

The READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command allows the Host to request a list of the possible format capacities for an installed writable media. This command also has the capability to report the writable capacity for a media when it is installed.

6.18.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ FORMAT CAPACITIES CDB is shown in Table 108.

Table 108 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|-------|--|
| 0 | | Operation Code (23h) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (MSB) | Allocation Length | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 9 | | Control | | | | | | | | |

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that an Host has allocated for returned data. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. The Drive shall terminate the data transfer when Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available data have been transferred to the Host, whatever is less.

6.18.2 Command Execution

The Drive shall construct a set of data structures that shall be transferred to the Host. The format of this returned data is a 4-byte header followed by some non-zero number of 8-byte format descriptors as shown in Table 109.

Table 109 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Data Format

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|---|-----|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 — 3 | | Capacity List Header | | | | | | | |
| 4 — 11 | | Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor | | | | | | | |
| Formattable Capacity Descriptor(s) | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Formattable Capacity Descriptor 1 | | | | | | | |
| .. | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | | Formattable Capacity Descriptor n | | | | | | | |
| .. | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.18.2.1 Capacity List Header

The Capacity List Header (Table 110) precedes all other returned data.

Table 110 — Capacity List Header

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|----------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | Capacity List Length | | | | | | | |

The Capacity List Length specifies the length in bytes of the available Capacity Descriptors that follow. Each Capacity Descriptor is eight bytes in length, making the Capacity List Length equal to eight times the number of descriptors. Values of $n * 8$ are valid, where $0 < n < 31$.

6.18.2.2 Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor

The Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor (Table 111) shall appear after the header.

Table 111 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-----|--|---|---|---|---|---|-----------------|---|
| 4 | | (MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | Reserved | | | | | | Descriptor Type | |
| 9 | | (MSB) Block Length/Spare Area Size (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |

The Number of Blocks indicates the number of addressable blocks for the capacity defined by each Descriptor Type.

The Descriptor Type field indicates the type of information the descriptor contains.

The Block Length/Spare Area Size definition is media specific.

For BD-R, the specific field values are shown in Table 112.

Table 112 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-R

| Descriptor Type | Format Status | Number of Blocks | Block Length/Spare Area Size |
|-----------------|---|--|--|
| 00b | Reserved | | |
| 01b | Unformatted Media (Brand-new disc) | The reported value is the total number of blocks of the Data Zone(s) on the mounted BD disc | Maximum number of Spare Area Clusters allowed for the currently mounted BD-R disc. |
| 10b | Formatted Media | SRM+POW formatted /RRM formatted disc | Number of Clusters allocated for Spare Area on the currently mounted BD-R disc. |
| | | SRM-POW disc that has at least one complete Session | |
| 11b | No Media Present/ Unknown capacity media (SRM-POW disc that has no complete Session and some data is written) | The reported value is for the maximum capacity of a media that the Drive is capable of reading. OR The reported value is for the maximum recordable size of the mounted disc | Block Length that specifies the length in bytes of each logical blocks. 800h for Multi-Media Drives. |

For BD-RE, the specific field values are shown in Table 113.

Table 113 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-RE

| Descriptor Type | Format Status | Number of Blocks | Block Length/Spare Area Size |
|-----------------|-------------------|--|---|
| 00b | Reserved | | |
| 01b | Unformatted Media | The reported value is the possible maximum Formattable capacity of the mounted disc (= total number of blocks of the Data Zone(s) on the mounted BD-RE disc) | Maximum number of Spare Area Clusters allowed for the currently mounted BD-RE disc. |
| 10b | Formatted Media | The reported value is the current media's total number of blocks in User Data Zone(s). | Number of Clusters allocated for Spare Area on the currently mounted BD-RE disc. |
| 11b | Reserved | | |

For BD-ROM, the specific field values are shown in Table 114.

Table 114 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-ROM

| Descriptor Type | Format Status | Number of Blocks | Block Length/Spare Area Size |
|-----------------|-----------------|--|---|
| 00b | Reserved | | |
| 01b | Reserved | | |
| 10b | Formatted Media | The reported value is the current media's total number of blocks in User Data Zone(s). | The length in bytes of each logical block |
| 11b | Reserved | | |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.18.2.3 Formattable Capacity Descriptor(s)

The Drive shall return only Formattable Capacity Descriptors (Table 115) that apply to the installed media. If there is no medium installed or the installed medium is not formattable by the FORMAT UNIT command, the Drive shall return only the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor.

Table 115 — Formattable Capacity Descriptor

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------------|--------------------------|---|---|---|---|----------|---|-------|--|
| 4 | (MSB) | Number of Blocks | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Format Type | | | | | | Reserved | | | |
| 9 | (MSB) | Type Dependent Parameter | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | | |

A Formattable Capacity Descriptor of Format Type 00h shall be reported if any other Formattable Capacity Descriptor is reported.

If the currently mounted media is neither BD-R nor BD-RE, refer to MMC-4 for the permitted Formattable Capacity Descriptors.

When a BD-RE or BD-R Profile is current and the medium is formattable, the returned Formattable Capacity descriptors shall conform to the definition as shown in Table 116.

Table 116 — Formattable Capacity Descriptors Returned for BD-R and BD-RE

| Format Type | Description | Type Dependent Parameter |
|----------------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 00h (BD-R) | Full Format (Default Format for BD media): When the currently mounted media is a blank BD-R disc, the descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total Spare area size in Cluster used for formatting the whole media. Spares shall be allocated. All parameters in the descriptor are vendor selected default values for BD-R discs. | Total Spare Area size in Clusters |
| 00h (BD-RE) | Full Format (Default Format for BD media): When the currently mounted media is a BD-RE disc, the descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total Spare area size in Cluster used for formatting the whole media. Spares shall be allocated. All parameters in the descriptor are vendor selected default values for BD-RE discs. The following are recommended Spare area distributions: For 80 mm SL BD-RE discs: ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 0 Clusters. For 80 mm DL BD-RE discs: ISA0 size = ISA1 size = 4096 Clusters and OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 0 Clusters. For 120 mm SL BD-RE discs: ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 8 192 Clusters. For 120 mm DL BD-RE discs: ISA0 size = ISA1 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 8 192 Clusters. | Total Spare Area size in Clusters |
| 01h (BD-RE) | Spare Area Expansion: The descriptor shall contain the minimum User Data Zone size in sectors. and the block size used for formatting the whole media. | Block length in bytes |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

| | | |
|------------------------|--|--|
| <p>30h (BD-RE)</p> | <p>BD-RE Format with Spare Area:</p> <p>The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total number of Spare Area size used for formatting the whole media. Three descriptors are reported:</p> <p>The first descriptor values are vendor preferred for the BD Drive.</p> <p>The second descriptor values are selected to reflect maximum Spare Area sizes:</p> <p>For 80 mm SL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 0 Clusters.</p> <p>For 80 mm DL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters, ISA1 size = 16 384 Clusters and OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 0 Clusters.</p> <p>For 120 mm SL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 16 384 Clusters.</p> <p>For 120 mm DL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters, OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 8192 Clusters, and ISA1 size = 16 384 Clusters.</p> <p>The third descriptor values are selected to reflect minimum Spare Area size. For 80 mm, 120 mm SL and DL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4 096 and ISA1 size = OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 0 Clusters.</p> | <p>Total Spare Area size in Clusters</p> |
| <p>31h (BD-RE)</p> | <p>BD-RE Format without Spare Area:</p> <p>The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the block size used for formatting the whole media. All parameters in the descriptor are for the format with no Spare Area. By using this parameter in FORMAT UNIT command, the Hardware Defect Management Feature (and consequently, Removable Disk Profile) becomes not Current.</p> | <p>Block length in bytes</p> |
| <p>32h (BD-R)</p> | <p>BD-R Format with Spare Area:</p> <p>The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks. Three descriptors are reported:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The first descriptor values are preferred by the BD Drive vendors. 2. The second descriptor values are selected to reflect maximum Spare Area sizes, resulting in minimum User Data Zone size. 3. The third descriptor values are selected to reflect minimum (but non-zero) Spare Area size, resulting in maximum User Data Zone size. <p>In each case total Spare Area size is: Data Zone size – Number of Blocks. Data Zone size is given in the number of blocks parameter of the maximum capacity descriptor for unformatted media.</p> | <p>Set to zeros</p> |

6.19 READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command

READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (Table 117) is a CD function that has been adapted to other media. For BD discs, returned data shall be fabricated by the Drive. The information returned is minimized and may have no relationship to media structure.

6.19.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB is shown in Table 117.

Table 117 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-------|----------------------|---|---|---|--------|---|-----|----------|-------|
| 0 | | OPERATION CODE (43h) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | | MSF | Reserved | |
| 2 | | Reserved | | | | Format | | | | |
| 3 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Track/Session Number | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | Allocation Length | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | | | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 9 | | Control | | | | | | | | |

6.19.1.1 MSF bit

When MSF is set to zero, the address fields in returned data formats shall be in LBA form. When MSF is set to one, the address fields in returned data formats shall be in MSF form.

6.19.1.2 Format field

The Format field is used to select a specific returned data format. For BD discs, only Format 0 and Format 1 are valid. If a BD disc is present and the Format code is neither 0 nor 1, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.19.1.3 Track/Session Number field

Track/Session Number shall be set to either zero or one when a BD disc is present. If Track/Session Number is neither zero nor one, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.19.1.4 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that may be returned by the Drive. An Allocation Length of zero shall not be considered an error.

6.19.2 Command Execution

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command was originally designed for CD media. For BD discs the returned data is fabricated.

6.19.2.1 Format 0: Track List

6.19.2.1.1 BD-ROM

A BD-ROM disc is viewed shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 118.

Table 118 — TOC Data Format 0: Data Returned for formatted BD-ROM disc

| | Byte(s) | Field | Value |
|--|---------|---------------------|--|
| Header | 0, 1 | TOC Data Length | 0012h |
| | 2 | First Track | 01h |
| | 3 | Last Track | 01h |
| Track 1 Descriptor | 4 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 5 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 6 | Track Number | 01h |
| | 7 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 8-11 | Track Start Address | LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00 |
| Track AAh (Lead-out) Descriptor | 12 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 13 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 14 | Track Number | AAh |
| | 15 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 16 - 19 | Track Start Address | LBA form = READ CAPACITY LBA + 1 MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah |

6.19.2.1.2 Unformatted BD-RE

An unformatted BD-RE disc has no structure to report. If the currently mounted media is an unformatted BD-RE, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Drives that are not capable of reading a BD-RE media should report CHECK CONDITION status, 2/30/02 CANNOT READ MEDIUM - INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

6.19.2.1.3 Formatted BD-RE

A formatted BD-RE disc shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 118.

6.19.2.1.4 Blank BD-R

A blank BD-R disc has no structure to report. If the currently mounted media is a blank BD-R, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Drives that are not capable of reading a BD-R media should report CHECK CONDITION status, 2/30/02 CANNOT READ MEDIUM - INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

6.19.2.1.5 BD-R RRM

A BD-R disc formatted in RRM shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 118.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.19.2.1.6 BD-R SRM-POW and SRM+POW

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command was originally designed for CD media. Since the Lead-out is reported as Logical Track AAh (=170), at most 169 Logical Tracks can be reported. Accurately adapting this command to BD-R formatted in SRM-POW or SRM+POW cannot be done, so the returned data is fabricated to maximize backward compatibility without being limited by the Logical Track number range.

Based upon format, the disc shall be viewed as shown in Table 119.

Table 119 — BD-R Track Translation for READ TOC/PMA/ATIP

| BD-R Format | TOC Fabrication |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Blank disc | Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. |
| SRM-POW, one open session | Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. |
| SRM-POW, one closed session | The one closed session is Viewed as one track. |
| SRM-POW, N > 1 Closed Sessions | The concatenation of the first N-1 sessions is viewed as Track 1. Session N (the last closed session) is viewed as Track 2. |
| SRM+POW | A disc formatted as SRM+POW is viewed as a closed disc with one session. The session is viewed as Track 1. |

TOC fabrication for SRM-POW and SRM+POW as shown in Table 120.

Table 120 — TOC Data Format 0: Data Returned for formatted BD-R discs

| | Byte(s) | Field | Value |
|---------------------------------|-------------|---------------------|--|
| Header | 0, 1 | TOC Data Length | 0012h (or 001Ah if Track 2 Descriptor is present) |
| | 2 | First Track | 01h |
| | 3 | Last Track | 01h (or 02h if Track 2 Descriptor is present) |
| Track 1 Descriptor | 4 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 5 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 6 | Track Number | 01h |
| | 7 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 8-11 | Track Start Address | LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00 |
| Track 2 Descriptor (if present) | 12 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 13 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 14 | Track Number | 02h |
| | 15 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 16-19 | Track Start Address | LBA form = Start LBA of last closed session. MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah |
| Track AAh (Lead-out) Descriptor | 12/20 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 13/21 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 14/22 | Track Number | AAh |
| | 15/23 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 16-19/24-27 | Track Start Address | LBA form = READ CAPACITY LBA + 1 MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah |

6.19.2.2 Format 1: Session Information

When a BD-ROM, formatted BD-R, and BD-RE is present, the TOC Format 1 returned data shall have the format shown in Table 121.

Table 121 — TOC Data Format 1: Data Returned for BD Discs

| | Byte(s) | Field | Value |
|------------------|---------|---|--|
| Header | 0, 1 | TOC Data Length | 000Ah |
| | 2 | First Session Number | 01h |
| | 3 | Last Session Number | 01h |
| Track Descriptor | 4 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 5 | ADR/CTL | 14h |
| | 6 | First Track Number in Last Complete Session | 01h |
| | 7 | Reserved | 00h |
| | 8 - 11 | Track Start Address | LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00 |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.20 READ TRACK INFORMATION command

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command provides information about a Logical Track.

When this command is required by an implemented Feature, the command shall always function, even if that Feature's Current bit becomes zero.

6.20.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ TRACK INFORMATION CDB is shown in Table 122.

Table 122 — READ TRACK INFORMATION CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|--|---|---|---|---|------|---------------------|---|
| 0 | | Operation Code (52h) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | | | Open | Address/Number Type | |
| 2 | (MSB) | Logical Block Address/ Track/Session Number | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (MSB) | Allocation Length | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | Control Byte | | | | | | | |

6.20.1.1 Open

On BD-R discs formatted as SRM-POW or SRM+POW, Open permits locating an Open Logical Track.

6.20.1.2 Address/Number Type

The Address/Number Type field in byte 1 is used to specify the contents of the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field, bytes 2 through 5 of the CDB. See Table 123.

6.20.1.3 Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number Fields

The Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field either directly or indirectly specifies a Logical Track number, T_A . See Table 123.

Table 123 — Addressed Track (T_A) According to LBA/Track/Session Number Field

| Address/Number Type field | Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number | Description |
|---------------------------|--|---|
| 00b | Logical Block Address (LBA) | MAX = Last Possible Lead-out Start Address as returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. If $LBA \geq MAX$, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. Otherwise, LBA lies within some Logical Track, T_A . |
| 01b | Logical Track number (LTN) | T_M = Last Track Number in the Last Session as returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. If $LTN > T_M$, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Otherwise, $T_A = LTN$. |
| 10b | Session Number (S_N) | S_M is the Number of Sessions as returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. If $S_N > S_M$, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Otherwise the $T_A =$ the first Logical Track in session S_N . |

| | | |
|-----|----------|--|
| 11b | Reserved | |
|-----|----------|--|

6.20.1.4 Determining the Specific Logical Track

When the currently mounted disc is BD-ROM, formatted BD-RE, or BD-R formatted as RRM, then T_A is only permitted to be 1. If the currently mounted disc is BD-ROM, formatted BD-RE, or BD-R formatted as RRM, and T_A is not 1, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB. For BD-R formatted as either SRM-POW or SRM+POW, there are potentially 3 Logical Track numbers to be determined: T , T_A , and T_O .

1. T is the Logical Track number for which Track Information shall be returned.
2. The Address/Number Type and the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number fields specify an addressed Logical Track, T_A .
3. T_O is the smallest Logical Track number such that T_O is open and $T_A \leq T_O$. If the disc contains no open tracks, then T_O shall be set to FFFFh.

If Open is set to zero, then $T = T_A$. If Open is set to one, then T shall be set to T_O .

If the currently mounted disc is BD-ROM, formatted BD-RE or BD-R formatted as RRM, and Open is set to one, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.20.1.5 Allocation Length

The number of Track Information Block bytes returned is limited by the Allocation Length field of the CDB. An Allocation Length of zero is not an error.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.20.2 Command Execution

The Drive shall collect the information requested by the Host into a Track Information Block structure, and transfer to the Host, restricted by Allocation Length.

The format and content of the Track Information Block is shown in Table 124.

Table 124 — Track Information Block

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|---|---|------------|------|------------|---|---|-------|-------|
| 0 | (MSB) | Data Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Track Number (Least Significant Byte) | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Session Number (Least Significant Byte) | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | Damage | Copy | Track Mode | | | | |
| 6 | RT | Blank | Packet/Inc | FP | Data Mode | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | LRA_V | NWA_V |
| 8 | (MSB) | Track Start Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | (MSB) | Next Writable Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | | | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | (MSB) | Free Blocks (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | | | |
| 18 | | | | | | | | | |
| 19 | | | | | | | | | |
| 20 | (MSB) | Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 21 | | | | | | | | | |
| 22 | | | | | | | | | |
| 23 | | | | | | | | | |
| 24 | (MSB) | Track Size (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 25 | | | | | | | | | |
| 26 | | | | | | | | | |
| 27 | | | | | | | | | |
| 28 | (MSB) | Last Recorded Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 29 | | | | | | | | | |
| 30 | | | | | | | | | |
| 31 | | | | | | | | | |
| 32 | Track Number (Most Significant Byte) | | | | | | | | |
| 33 | Session Number (Most Significant Byte) | | | | | | | | |
| 34 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 35 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 36 | (MSB) | Read Compatibility LBA (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 39 | | | | | | | | | |

Table 125 shows required content when BD-ROM disc is present.

Table 125 — TIB Fields for BD-ROM Discs

| TIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| Track Number | 1 | BD-ROM is always one track |
| Session Number | 1 | BD-ROM is always one session |
| Damage | 0b | Not used by BD-ROM and shall be 0b |
| Copy | 0b | Not used by BD-ROM and shall be 0b |
| Track Mode | 4h | BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4 |
| RT | 0b | The BD-ROM Logical Track is always reserved. |
| Blank | 0b | The BD-ROM Logical Track is never blank. |
| Packet/Inc | 0b | Recording is incremental by Cluster |
| FP | 0b | FP has no meaning on BD-ROM |
| Data Mode | 1h | BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1 |
| LRA_V | 0 | LRA is not valid on BD-ROM |
| NWA_V | 0 | NWA is not valid on BD-ROM |
| Track Start Address | 00000000h | Start address of Logical Track 1 |
| Next Writable Address | 00000000h | NWA is not valid on BD-ROM |
| Free Blocks | 00000000h | None available on BD-ROM |
| Fixed Packet Size/Blocking Factor | 00000020h | Cluster size in sectors |
| Track Size | READ CAPACITY LBA + 1 | BD-ROM is always one track |
| Last Recorded Address | 00000000h | LRA is not valid on BD-ROM |
| Read Compatibility LBA | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-ROM |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 126 describes TIB fields when the currently mounted BD-R disc is SRM.

Table 126 — TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM

| TIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|---|
| Track Number | T | Current Track Number: $1 \leq T \leq 7927$ |
| Session Number | S | Current Session Number: $1 \leq S \leq 7927$ |
| Damage | xb | Default value is zero. Set to 1 only when Drive cannot recover most recent copy of TDMS. |
| Copy | 0b | Not used by BD-R and shall be 0b |
| Track Mode | 4h | BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4 |
| RT | 0b | The invisible/incomplete track |
| | 1b | Track is not invisible/incomplete |
| Blank | 0b | When Track NWA \neq Track Start Address |
| | 1b | When Track NWA = Track Start Address |
| Packet/Inc | 1b | Recording is incremental by Cluster |
| FP | 0b | FP has no meaning on BD-R |
| Data Mode | 1h | BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1 |
| LRA_V | xb | Specifies validity of LRA field. Shall be set to zero when format is SRM+POW. |
| NWA_V | xb | Specifies validity of NWA field |
| Track Start Address | SLBA | LBA of first user block in track. |
| Next Writable Address | NWA | Append LBA for track |
| Free Blocks | FB | Number of blocks in Logical Track from NWA until end |
| Fixed Packet Size/Blocking Factor | 00000020h | Cluster size in sectors |
| Track Size | N – StartLBA | If T+1 exists, then N = StartLBA of T+1. If T+1 does not exist, then N = Capacity, where Capacity = Number of blocks From READ FORMAT CAPACITIES current capacity descriptor. |
| Last Recorded Address | LRA | When format is SRM-POW, this is the LBA of the last block appended with Host supplied data. |
| Read Compatibility LBA | 00000000h | This field is not used by BD Drives and shall be 00000000h |

Table 127 describes TIB fields when the currently mounted BD-R disc is RRM.

Table 127 —TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM

| TIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Track Number | 1 | BD-R RRM is viewed as one track |
| Session Number | 1 | BD-R RRM is viewed as one session |
| Damage | x | Default value is zero. Set to 1 only when Drive cannot recover most recent copy of TDMS. |
| Copy | 0 | Not used by BD-R and shall be 0b |
| Track Mode | 4h | BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4 |
| RT | 0b | Not used by BD-R RRM and shall be 0b |
| Blank | 1b | A formatted RRM disc is not blank |
| Packet/Inc | 0b | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| FP | 0b | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| Data Mode | 1h | BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1 |
| LRA_V | 0 | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| NWA_V | 0 | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| Track Start Address | 00000000h | Not used by Random Writable Drives |
| Next Writable Address | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| Free Blocks | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| Fixed Packet Size/Blocking Factor | 00000020h | Cluster size in sectors |
| Track Size | CAP + 1 | CAP = LBA from READ CAPACITY command |
| Last Recorded Address | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-R RRM |
| Read Compatibility LBA | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-R RRM |

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

Table 128 shows required content when BD-RE disc is present.

Table 128 — TIB Fields for formatted BD-RE Discs

| TIB Field | Value | Meaning |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Track Number | 1 | BD-RE is viewed as one track |
| Session Number | 1 | BD-RE is viewed as one session |
| Damage | 0b | Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b |
| Copy | 0b | Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b |
| Track Mode | 4h | BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4 |
| RT | 0b | Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b |
| Blank | 0b | Once formatted, Blank = 0. |
| Packet/Inc | 0b | Not valid on BD-RE |
| FP | 0b | Not valid on BD-RE |
| Data Mode | 1b | BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1 |
| LRA_V | 0b | Not valid on BD-RE |
| NWA_V | 0b | Not valid on BD-RE |
| Track Start Address | 00000000h | Not used by Random Writable Drives |
| Next Writable Address | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-RE |
| Free Blocks | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-RE |
| Fixed Packet Size/Blocking Factor | 00000020h | Cluster size in sectors |
| Track Size | CAP + 1 | CAP = LBA from READ CAPACITY command |
| Last Recorded Address | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-RE |
| Read Compatibility LBA | 00000000h | Not valid on BD-RE |

6.21 REQUEST SENSE command

The Core Feature requires that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.22 RESERVE TRACK command

6.22.1 Introduction

The RESERVE TRACK command allows creation of a new Logical Track.

6.22.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

The RESERVE TRACK CDB is shown in Table 129.

Table 129 — RESERVE TRACK CDB

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|-------------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-----|------|
| 0 | Operation Code (53h) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | RMZ | ARSV |
| 2 | Logical Track Reservation Parameter | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Control | | | | | | | |

If the Logical Track reservation is not applicable to the current format of the currently mounted disc, (e.g., BD-R formatted as RRM, BD-RE), the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM/INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

If the currently mounted disc is BD-R - either blank or formatted as SRM and ARSV is set to zero, the Logical Track Reservation Parameter is Reservation Size as shown in Table 130. The Reservation Size is the number of user blocks desired for the Logical Track reservation. The actual number of blocks allocated is calculated according to the currently mounted media. Rounding up is permitted. For BD-R, rounding shall be to the next Cluster boundary. In all cases, if the actual Reservation Size is larger than or equal to the available space, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Reservation Size field is set to 0, no reservation is done by the Drive and shall not be considered an error.

Table 130 — Reservation Size form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|----------|------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 5 | (MSB) | Reservation Size | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (LSB) | | | | | | | |

If the currently mounted disc is BD-R - either blank or formatted as SRM and ARSV is set to one, the Logical Track Reservation Parameter is Reservation Logical Block Address as shown in Table 131. If Reservation by LBA is not supported for the currently mounted disc, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Table 131 — LBA form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2 | (MSB) Reservation Logical Block Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Reserved | | | | | | | |

Otherwise a new Logical Track is created with Start LBA set to the Reservation LBA when the following conditions are satisfied.

1. The Reservation LBA shall be less than the largest possible user data area LBA for this disc.
If Reservation LBA is greater than or equal to the largest possible user data area LBA for this disc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.
2. Logical Tracks on BD-R shall begin with the first block of a Cluster.
If the LBA is not the address of the first block of a Cluster, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
3. The second Logical Track of a split shall be blank.
If the Logical Track is closed or Reservation LBA is less than the NWA of the Logical Track that contains the LBA, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
4. Any Logical Track generated by a Logical Track splitting shall have the length more than or equal to 32.
If Reservation LBA = Logical Track Start Address of any Logical Track, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.22.3 Command Execution

6.22.3.1 Logical Track Creation by Number of Blocks

A new Logical Track shall be created from the invisible/incomplete Logical Track as shown in Table 132.

Table 132 — Track Creation from the Invisible/Incomplete Track

| Logical Track | Invisible/Incomplete Track Prior to Reservation | New Logical Track | Invisible/Incomplete Track After Reservation |
|---|--|-------------------|---|
| Track Number | N^1 | N | N+1 |
| Start LBA | A^2 | A | A+L |
| Length | $RC^3 - A$ | L | $RC - (A+L)$ |
| ¹ N is at least 1. The maximum value is media type dependent. ² LBA A may be any valid LBA within any Logical Track. On BD-R, A shall be the LBA of the first block of a Cluster. ³ RC is the recordable capacity of the media. If the largest possible recordable LBA is CAP, then $RC = CAP + 1$. | | | |

6.22.3.2 Logical Track Creation by LBA (Track Splitting)

When a Logical Track is split by specifying the start LBA of the new track, the new Logical Track shall be blank. If Reservation LBA is in Logical Track N, then the new Logical Track with start address equal to Reservation LBA shall be numbered N+1. If M is a Logical Track and $M > N$ prior to the Logical Track split, then it shall be numbered M+1 after the Logical Track split.

6.23 SEND DISC STRUCTURE command

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command provides a means for the Host to transfer BD STRUCTURE data to the Drive.

6.23.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE CDB is shown in Table 133.

Table 133 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE command descriptor block

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|----------------------|-----------------------|---|---|------------|---|---|-------|
| 0 | Operation Code (BFh) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | Media Type | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Format | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) | Parameter List Length | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 9 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 11 | Control | | | | | | | |

6.23.1.1 Media Type

The Media Type field identifies the Media Type to which this command is directed. The BD disc type is 0001b.

6.23.1.2 Format

Table 134 shows the valid Format field values when Media Type is set to 0001b.

Table 134 — Format Field Definitions for Media Type = 0001b

| Format | Data | Description |
|--------|-----------|---------------------|
| 0Fh | Timestamp | Send Timestamp data |
| 30h | PAC | Send PAC data |

6.23.1.3 Parameter List Length

The Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the DISC STRUCTURE data to be transferred from the Host to the Drive after the CDB is transferred. A Structure Data Length field of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.23.2 command Execution

The description of the command execution is dependent upon the Format field of the CDB.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.23.2.1 Format Code = 0Fh: Timestamp

A Timestamp is needed for the Initial Recording Date in the Primary PAC on BD-RE and so on. The format of Timestamp field is structured as shown in Table 135.

The time should be current UTC (Universal Coordinated Time) 24 hour clock.

Table 135 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format Code = 0Fh)

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | (MSB) Data Structure Length (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| Timestamp Data | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | (MSB) Year (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | (MSB) Month (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 9 | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | (MSB) Day (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | (MSB) Hour (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 13 | | | | | | | | |
| 14 | (MSB) Minute (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 15 | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | (MSB) Second (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 17 | | | | | | | | |

The Data Structure Length field specifies the length in bytes of the Timestamp Data to follow. A Data Structure Length field of zero indicates that no Disc Timestamp Data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

The Year field shall specify the year encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “0001” to “9999”.

The Month field shall specify the month of the year encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “01” to “12”.

The Day field shall specify the day of the month encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “01” to “31”.

The Hour field shall specify the hour of the day encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “00” to “23”.

The Minute field shall specify the minute of the hour encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “00” to “59”.

The Second field shall specify the second of the minute encoded according to ISO/IEC 646 in the range “00” to “59”.

6.23.2.2 Format Code 30h: Physical Access Control (PAC)

6.23.2.2.1 General

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are provided as a structure on the disc to include additional information for interchange between interchange parties. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area and backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area. The format of PAC data provided by the Host is shown in Table 136.

Table 136 — Physical Access Control Send Data Format

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|-------|
| Byte | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Data Structure Length = N+2 | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 1 | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | Erase | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| PAC Structure | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | PAC Header | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| 383 | | | | | | | | |
| 384 | PAC Specific Information | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | |
| N-1 | | | | | | | | |

If the Erase bit is set to zero, the remainder of the structure contains the PAC Cluster content that should be written to the media.

If the Erase bit is set to one, each occurrence of a PAC with the PAC ID matching the PAC ID in the PAC Header in the parameter list shall be erased (on BD-RE) or invalidated (on BD-R). The PAC information following the disc structure header shall be ignored.

The Drive shall neither record nor erase any PAC that is unknown to the Drive.

The value for N (PAC structure size) is at least 384 and at most 63 488.

The PAC data contains fields that are not arbitrary changeable by the Host (e.g., the PAC Update Count field, Unknown PAC rule bits in PAC header). The Drive may ignore such fields in the PAC Structure data sent by the Host and the Drive shall set the correct value defined by the *System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications*, or the *System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications*.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.23.2.2.2 DWP PAC

The Disc Write Protect (DWP) PAC Cluster is used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password can be included. Recognition and reading the DWP PAC is mandatory. Writing the DWP PAC is optional. If the Drive does not support writing the DWP PAC, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB..

The format of the Disc Write Protect PAC structure is shown Table 137.

Table 137 — DWP PAC

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|---------------------|--|---|---|---|---|-----|---|-------|--|
| Byte | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | (MSB) Data Structure Length = 430 | | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | VWE | | Erase | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| DWP PAC Data | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | DWP PAC Header | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | | | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | | | | |
| 383 | | | | | | | | | |
| 384 | Known PAC Entire Disc Flags | | | | | | | | |
| 385 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 386 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 387 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 388 | Write Protect Control Byte (see Table 5) | | | | | | | | |
| 389 - 395 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 396 - 427 | Write Protect Password | | | | | | | | |

The VWE (Virtual Write Enable) bit is used to enable or disable writing to a virtually write protected disc. When VWE is set to 1, the Host is requesting the ability to write on a virtually write protected disc. This is a temporary write capability, a media change or Device reset will cause the system to return to a write protected state. When VWE is set to 0, it indicates that the Host is rescinding temporary write ability.

The Erase bit is defined as in the general case specified in 6.23.2.2.1.

If there is a current valid Write Protect Password on the disc, then the Drive shall process this request only if the Write Protect Password field matches the Password on the disc.

The length of a DWP PAC is 428 bytes.

6.24 SEND OPC INFORMATION command

The SEND OPC INFORMATION command descriptor block (Table 138) allows the Host to request that the Drive perform Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) on the currently mounted medium.

Table 138 — SEND OPC INFORMATION command descriptor block

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|-----|----------------------|-----------------------|---|---|---|---|----------|----------|--|
| 0 | Operation Code (54h) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | | DoOpc | |
| 2 | Reserved | | | | | | Exclude1 | Exclude0 | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (MSB) | Parameter List Length | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Control | | | | | | | | |

If DoOpc is set to one, the Drive shall determine OPC values for the current recording conditions. It may be necessary to perform an OPC operation. These OPC values shall become current. When DoOpc is set to one, the Parameter List Length field is ignored.

If DoOpc is set to zero, the Drive shall perform no OPC operation.

Exclude0 and Exclude1 allow the Host to select the layers to be calibrated.

Table 139 shows the behavior given various combinations of control bits from byte 1.

Table 139 — Drive Action with Combinations of DoOPC, Exclude0, and Exclude1

| DoOpc | Exclude0 | Exclude1 | Drive Response |
|-------|----------|----------|--|
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Perform OPC operation on each layer to set OPC values for current media speed. |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | Perform OPC operation only on layer 0 to set OPC values for current media speed. |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | Perform OPC operation only on layer 1 to set OPC values for current media speed. |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | No operation — GOOD status shall be returned |
| 0 | x | x | If Parameter List Length is zero, no operation — GOOD status shall be returned. |

If the mounted media is not a recordable dual layer media supported by the Drive and either Exclude0 or Exclude1 is non-zero, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

BD-R Drives do not support receiving OPC information from the Host. If the Standard Disc Information returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command returns no OPC tables, then the Drive does not support receiving OPC information from the Host. In this case, if Parameter List Length is not zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25 SET STREAMING command

The Real-time Streaming Feature requires that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Real-time Streaming Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.26 START STOP UNIT command

The Removable Medium and Power Management Features require that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes those Features. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.27 SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command

The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command shall ensure that logical blocks in the cache memory have their most recent data value recorded on the physical medium. If a more recent data value for a logical block exists in the cache memory than on the physical medium, then the logical blocks from the cache memory shall be written to the physical medium.

Table 140 shows the Features associated with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command.

Table 140 — Features Associated with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Command Requirement |
|----------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 0020h | Random Writable | Mandatory |
| 0021h | Incremental Streaming Writable | Mandatory |
| 0025h | Write Once | Mandatory |
| 0026h | Restricted Overwrite | Mandatory |
| 0027h | CD-RW CAV Write | Mandatory |
| 002Bh | DVD+R | Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one) |
| 002Ch | Rigid Restricted Overwrite | Mandatory |
| 002Dh | CD Track At Once | Mandatory |
| 002Eh | CD Mastering (RAW) | Mandatory |
| 0042h | TSR | Mandatory |

6.27.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.27.1.1 The CDB

The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE CDB is shown in Table 141.

Table 141 — SYNCHRONIZE CACHE CDB

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|-----|-----------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|-------|--------|
| 0 | Operation Code (35h) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | IMMED | RelAdr |
| 2 | (MSB) Logical Block Address (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 7 | (MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB) | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | Control | | | | | | | |

6.27.1.2 IMMED

If IMMED (Immediate) is set to zero, status shall be returned only after the operation is completed. If IMMED is set to one, status shall be returned as soon as the CDB has been validated.

6.27.1.3 RelAdr

RelAdr (Relative Address) is obsolete and shall be set to zero.

6.27.1.4 Logical Block Address

The Drive may ignore the Logical Block Address field.

6.27.1.5 Number of Blocks

The Drive may ignore the Number of Blocks field.

6.27.2 Command Execution

In streamed write operations, the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command shall force conditions equivalent to a buffer underrun.

If all data in the cache is synchronized with the media when this command is received, it shall not be considered an error.

The Drive shall perform any pending verification for TSR at this time:

- If IMMED bit is set to zero, and at least one defective writable unit was found during the cache synchronization, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07).
- If the IMMED bit is set to one, the Host shall poll the progress of the synchronize cache operation using TEST UNIT READY command until the Drive reports either no CHECK CONDITION or if at least one defective writable unit was found during the cache synchronization CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07).

In both cases, the Drive shall however complete the synchronization of all data in the cache and the verifications for TSR prior to terminating the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE operation with CHECK CONDITION with said sense bytes. If this CHECK CONDITION with said sense bytes is returned, the Host shall read the defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data).

6.28 TEST UNIT READY command

The Core Feature requires that this command be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Core Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD Read Feature is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

6.29 VERIFY (10) command

The Formattable Feature requires that this command be implemented. Each BD-R Profile includes the Formattable Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this command requires no special behavior from the Drive.

See MMC-4 for a description of this command.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.30 WRITE (10) command

The WRITE (10) command requests that the Drive write Host provided data to the medium.

6.30.1 The CDB and its Parameters

The WRITE (10) CDB is shown in Table 142.

Table 142 — WRITE (10) CDB

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|------|-----------------------|---|-----|-----|----------|-----|--------|---|-------|
| Byte | | | | | | | | | |
| 0 | Operation Code (2Ah) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | DPO | FUA | Reserved | TSR | RelAdr | | |
| 2 | Logical Block Address | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | (MSB) |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | (LSB) |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Transfer Length | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | (MSB) |
| 9 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| | Control | | | | | | | | |

6.30.1.1 DPO

Disable Page Out (DPO) is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero.

6.30.1.2 FUA

A FUA (force unit access) bit, set to one, indicates that the Drive shall access the media in performing the command prior to returning GOOD status. In the case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media. WRITE commands shall not return GOOD status until the logical blocks have actually been written on the media, and the Write process is complete. This mode may not operate correctly with a sequence of writes intended to produce a continuous stream unless command queuing is implemented

A FUA bit of zero indicates that the Drive may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For WRITE operations, logical blocks may be transferred directly to the cache memory. GOOD status may be returned to the Host prior to writing the logical blocks to the medium. Any error that occurs after the GOOD status is returned is a deferred error, and information regarding the error is not reported until the following command.

6.30.1.3 TSR

Timely Safe Recording (TSR) bit, set to one, indicates during phase one that the Drive shall detect and report defective writable units within the Error reporting threshold set in Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (page code 01h). The Drive may perform certify before write or may perform verification after write or both or another method of error detection but shall ensure error detection is performed. The same bit, set to one, indicates also that replacement due to defect shall not be performed at this time – AWRE (Automatic Write Reallocation Enabled) and Write Retry Count settings from Read-Write Error Recovery mode page shall be ignored – no automatic reallocation and no write retry is allowed. The Host may perform writing with TSR bit set to one, and then may repeat the writing of signaled defective writable units with TSR bit set to zero (rewritable media) or one (write-once media). For best performance, the Drive may remember the defective writable units after reporting them to the Host in order to avoid the work of detection if the Host writes again this particular writable unit (with or without TSR set to one). For Write-Once media during this phase one, the LBA in CDB shall match an unrecorded LBA. Combination of Pseudo-Overwrite and TSR in a single write command is not permitted.

TSR bit set to one indicates during phase two that the Drive shall perform hardware defect management. This is for the sole use on write once media. During this phase, the LBA in CDB shall match a recorded LBA. Additionally, the Drive shall ensure the LBA matches a DFL entry or a defect found during phase one (if not, the write command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB). The data shall be written by the Drive to the spare area and the DFL shall be updated to reflect this remapping, as if the Drive was performing a defect management for this block.

See 4.7.3.0 to distinguish phase one and two on write once media.

If TSR bit is set to one and if the TSR Feature is not present or not current, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the LBA and transfer length is not matching ECC block first byte and ECC block end, and TSR bit is set to one, the Drive shall fail the command with check condition and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

When TSR bit is set to zero, no change to the behavior of the command is to be performed. However for rewritable media, if TSR is set to zero, and if the writable unit was detected as defective during the execution of an earlier write command with TSR set to one, the Drive may perform replacement immediately, without first attempting to record the known-as-defective writable unit.

FUA and TSR bits are not mutually exclusive. If both FUA and TSR bits are set to one during the phase one of TSR, the Drive shall perform the error detection prior to returning GOOD status. In case a defect is detected, it shall be reported as CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07) immediately and shall not be reported as deferred error.

6.30.1.4 RelAdr

RelAdr (Relative Address) is obsolete and shall be set to zero.

6.30.1.5 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field specifies the logical block where the write operation shall begin. If Starting Logical Block Address is not within the range specified by the READ CAPACITY command response, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. When the Random Writable Feature or the Write Once Feature is not current, valid Logical Block Addresses may be further restricted. In such cases, if the Starting Logical Block Address is not valid, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

6.30.1.6 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error and no data shall be written.

6.30.2 Command Execution

6.30.2.1 Write Protect

If the user data zone is protected by a DWP PAC or the user data zone is protected by the unknown PAC rules of some unknown PAC, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to DATAPROTECT/WRITE PROTECTED/PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECTED.

6.30.2.2 BD-RE

No change from Removable Disk Profile behavior. Since this includes the Random Writable Feature with a write block size of 2 048 bytes. This requires that the Drive implement a read-modify-write process in order to support random logical block writing.

6.30.2.3 BD-R RRM

If the LBA of any block in the write range has already been written, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to BLANK CHECK/WORM MEDIUM - OVERWRITE ATTEMPTED (08/30/0C).

6.30.2.4 BD-R SRM-POW

If the Logical Block Address field is not the NWA of some open Logical Track, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

Data from a previous write command(s) may be buffered for recording to Logical Track N. If the current WRITE command starts with the NWA of Logical Track M \neq N, then the Drive may pad the buffered data to a Cluster boundary and may flush to the disc prior to buffering for data for append to Logical Track M.

If the FUA bit is set to 1 all data supplied from this command shall be recorded prior to returning command status. If the data for last block of this command is not stored in sector 31 of the targeted Cluster, the Drive shall append padding blocks until the end of the Cluster.

6.30.2.5 BD-R SRM+POW mandatory Flush Conditions

If a sequence of appending write commands leaves the last Cluster buffer only partially filled, the Drive shall typically wait for additional appending write commands in order to complete filling the Cluster buffer. If instead, a different disc accessing command is received, the Cluster buffer shall be padded with zeros and written to the disc prior to executing the new command. This is called flushing the Cluster. If the new command is:

TEST UNIT READY,
READ TRACK INFORMATION,
GET EVENT/STATUS NOTIFICATION,
GET CONFIGURATION,
REQUEST SENSE,
INQUIRY, or
READ BUFFER CAPACITY,

the command shall be executed to completion and the Cluster shall not be flushed.

TDMS updates are not typically performed each time the TDMS changes. Updates are collected and performed at some vendor specific time. If a

CLOSE TRACK/SESSION command,
FORMAT UNIT command,
RESERVE TRACK command,
SEND DISC STRUCTURE command,(PAC),
SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command, or
START STOP UNIT command (Eject, Sleep)

is received while TDMS changes are pending, the TDMS shall be updated prior to executing any subsequent WRITE command.

6.30.2.6 When Using the TSR Method

In case of TSR bit set to one during phase one, when TSR recording method Feature (0042h) is current and if a defect is found for the writable unit being written, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED (03/0C/07) within the error reporting threshold set through Read-Write Error Recovery mode page. Both errors found during writing and errors found during verify shall

be reported with this error code. Data in buffer for non defective writable unit(s) shall be written on the medium normally. In other words, data in buffer for other writable unit(s) than the writable unit reported as defective shall be written, or if eventually the other writable unit(s) is found defective, they shall be equally reported as defective. If this CHECK CONDITION with said sense bytes is returned, the Host shall read the defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data).

Reporting of non-manageable defects such as incompatible media for write are unchanged by TSR bit.

Blu-ray Disc (BD) Multi-Media Command Set Description

Version 1.0

6.31 WRITE (12) command

The WRITE (12) command requests that the Drive write Host data to the medium. In order to achieve correct operation, the Drive may require information from the Write Parameters mode page.

6.31.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The WRITE (12) CDB is shown in Table 143.

Table 143 — WRITE (12) CDB

| Byte | Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|------|-------|-----------------------|-----|----------|-----|----------|-----|----------|---|
| 0 | | Operation Code (AAh) | | | | | | | |
| 1 | | Reserved | | | FUA | Reserved | TSR | Reserved | |
| 2 | (MSB) | Logical Block Address | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | (MSB) | Transfer Length | | | | | | | |
| 7 | | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | (LSB) | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | | Streaming | VNR | Reserved | | | | | |
| 11 | | Control | | | | | | | |

6.31.1.1 FUA

A FUA (Force Unit Access) bit, set to one, indicates that the Drive shall access the media in performing the command prior to returning GOOD status. In the case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media. WRITE commands shall not return GOOD status until the logical blocks have actually been written on the media, and the Write process is complete. This mode may not operate correctly with a sequence of writes intended to produce a continuous stream unless command queuing is implemented

A FUA bit of zero indicates that the Drive may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For WRITE operations, logical blocks may be transferred directly to the cache memory. GOOD status may be returned to the Host prior to writing the logical blocks to the medium. Any error that occurs after the GOOD status is returned is a deferred error, and information regarding the error is not reported until the following command.

6.31.1.2 TSR

See 6.30.1.3.

6.31.1.3 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field specifies the logical block where the write operation shall begin. If Starting Logical Block Address is not within the range specified by the READ CAPACITY command response, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.

6.31.1.4 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error and no data shall be written.

6.31.1.5 Streaming

See MMC-4.

TSR and Streaming bits are not mutually exclusive. When both bits are set to one, the Drive shall perform stream write with error detection and report but no replacement if a defect is found. If insufficient time is available to perform error detection given the data rate streaming requirement set by the Host through an earlier SET STREAMING command, and given the Error reporting threshold set by the Host through an earlier MODE SELECT on Read-Write Error Recovery mode page, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

With TSR and Streaming bits combination, the Host software will have a guaranteed average streaming speed, but has to expect the write to be done by burst by the Drive. Hence the Host software has buffer data between bursts (while Drive is detecting potential errors).

6.31.1.6 VNR

6.31.1.6.1 When the Currently Mounted Disc is not BD-R

VNR is applicable only to BD-R. The Drive shall ignore VNR when the currently mounted media is not BD-R.

6.31.1.6.2 When the Currently Mounted Disc is BD-R

If the Hardware Defect Management Feature is current, non-streamed writes should be verified by the Drive in an automatic, verify-after-write process. Some applications may be designed to expect behavior associated with Drives and media that do not automatically perform verify-after-write (e.g. write-once media without spare areas). The VNR (Verify-Not-Required) bit provides a method by which the Drive can provide both behaviors.

If Streaming is set to one, VNR has no meaning.

If Streaming is set to zero and VNR is set to zero, the default behavior of automatic verify-after-write functions are unchanged.

If Streaming is set to zero and VNR is set to one, the default automatic verify-after-write functions in the BD-R Drive should be disabled.

6.31.1.7 Blocking Factor

The Start LBA and the Transfer Length identify a Logical Track into which the data is to be written. The GET CONFIGURATION command or Track Information Block for that Logical Track identifies a Blocking Factor. When the Host issues the command with the Streaming bit set to one, the values of the Starting Logical Block Address and the Transfer Length fields shall each be an integral multiple of the Blocking factor. If either the Starting Logical Block Address field or the Transfer Length field is not set to an integral multiple of the Blocking Factor, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.31.2 Command Execution

See 6.30.2.

6.32 WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command

The WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command requests that the Drive write the data transferred from the Host to the medium and then verify that the data is correctly written.

6.32.1 The CDB and Its Parameters

The WRITE AND VERIFY (10) CDB is shown in Table 144.

Table 144 — WRITE AND VERIFY (10) CDB

| Bit Byte | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|----------|----------|--|
| 0 | Operation Code (2Eh) | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | Reserved | | | | | | Reserved | Reserved | |
| 2 | Starting Logical Block Address | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 8 | Transfer Length | | | | | | (LSB) | | |
| 9 | Control | | | | | | | | |

6.32.1.1 Starting Logical Block Address

Starting Logical Block Address references the block at which the operation shall begin.

6.32.1.2 Transfer Length

Transfer length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data or blanks that shall be written and verified. A transfer length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be verified. This condition shall not be considered as an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be verified.

6.32.2 Command Execution

Writing shall be according to the description of the WRITE (10) command when the FUA bit is set to one. Verify Error Recovery mode page parameters are not supported by MM Drives. The Drive shall utilize the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page as verify parameters. The AWRE and ARRE bits shall control automatic reallocation.

When TSR is set to one, the verification enforced by this command may be considered by the Drive as sufficient error detection and no additional error detection work is requested.

7 Mode parameters for BD Drives

7.1 Mode Parameter List

The presence of the BD-ROM Profile causes no change in either the Mode Parameter List or Mode Parameter List Header.

See MMC-4 for a description of these parameters.

7.2 Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (Page Code 01h)

7.2.1 Introduction

The Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (Table 146) specifies the error recovery parameters the Drive shall use during any command that performs a data read or write operation from the media (e.g. READ, READ CD, WRITE, etc.).

Table 145 shows the Features associated with the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page.

Table 145 — Features Associated with the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page

| Feature Number | Feature Name | Requirement |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 0010h | Random Readable | Mandatory when PP bit is 1. |
| 0020h | Random Writable | Mandatory when PP bit is 1. |
| 0024h | Hardware Defect Management | Mandatory |
| 0025h | Write Once | Mandatory when PP bit is 1. |
| 0029h | Enhanced Defect Reporting | Mandatory |
| 0042h | TSR Feature | Mandatory |

7.2.2 The mode page and its parameters

7.2.2.1 The mode page

Table 146 — Read-Write Error Recovery mode page Format

| Bit | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 | |
|-----|-------------------------|--|-----------------|----|----------|-----|-------|-------|--|
| 0 | PS | Reserved | Page Code (01h) | | | | | | |
| 1 | Page Length (0Ah) | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | Error Recovery Behavior | | | | | | | | |
| | AWRE | ARRE | TB | RC | Reserved | PER | DTE | DCR | |
| 3 | Read Retry Count | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | | | | | |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | | | EMCDR | | |
| 8 | Write Retry Count | | | | | | | | |
| 9 | (MSB) | Error Reporting Threshold Length (in Logical Blocks) | | | | | | (LSB) | |
| 10 | | | | | | | | | |
| 11 | | | | | | | | | |

7.2.2.2 PS

When Parameters Savable (PS) bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support saving this mode page data. When PS is set to one, the Drive supports saving this mode page data.

7.2.2.3 Page Code

The Page Code field shall be set to 01h, identifying the Read-Write Error Recovery mode page.

7.2.2.4 Page Length

The Page Length shall be set to 0Ah.

7.2.2.5 Error Recovery Behavior

See MMC-4.

7.2.2.6 Read Retry Count

The Read Retry Count field specifies the number of times that the Drive shall attempt its read recovery algorithm.

7.2.2.7 Enhanced Media Certification and Defect Reporting (EMCDR)

See MMC-4.

7.2.2.8 Write Retry Count

The Write Retry Count field specifies the number of times that the Drive shall attempt its write recovery algorithm.

7.2.2.9 Error Reporting Threshold Length for TSR

The Error Reporting Threshold Length field specifies the threshold length for error reporting. It is a count of logical blocks. A defect found during the execution of a write command, or read command, or verification of a writable unit including the LBA of the previously mentioned write command, shall be reported before or when this count of logical block has been transmitted by the Host through write commands. The defect may be reported earlier but shall not be reported later. If a write command would cause the count of logical block to be exceeded and a defect has already been found but not reported, the write command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to (new) 02 04 09 LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, THRESHOLD CONDITION MET. The Host shall issue again the write command that did cause the count of logical block to be exceeded after reading the defect information from the Drive using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data). If a write command would cause the count of logical block to be exceeded but writing or verification of buffered write commands has not been performed, the write command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to 02 04 08 LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS. The Drive shall then proceed with cache writing and or verification.

A value of 0h means that TSR method is not supported. If TSR method is supported, the threshold's length shall be strictly bigger than the buffer reported by the Drive to READ BUFFER CAPACITY. A threshold length which allows enough delay between the write pass and the verify pass so that write to verify and verify to write transition time is negligible compared to the write time for the threshold length is recommended. If the Drive does not support interruption of verify pass during phase one to proceed incoming commands, it should not allow a threshold length longer than what it can verify without causing a timeout.

The Host may keep the default threshold length or may increase or decrease the threshold length by MODE SELECT. If the value set by the Host is not supported, it shall be rounded by the Drive to the nearest smaller threshold supported. The Host shall check the selected value using MODE SENSE.

The Host shall not change the error reporting threshold during phase one. The Drive shall fail, with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL

REQUEST/ COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR, any change attempt after the first TSR write has been issued and when no synchronize cache command has yet being issued to signal the end of the phase.

7.3 Power Condition mode page (Page Code 1Ah)

The Power Management Feature requires that this mode page be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Power Management Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this mode page requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD-ROM Profile is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this mode page.

7.4 Timeout & Protect mode page (Page Code 1Dh)

The Timeout Feature requires that this mode page be implemented. The BD-ROM Profile includes the Timeout Feature. From the Host's perspective, use of this mode page requires no special behavior from a Drive when the BD-ROM Profile is current.

See MMC-4 for a description of this mode page.

END